English A-Levels Transition/Qualifying Stage

Organisational matters How-to guides Language kit Basic Information

PREFACE

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Dear students,

For the next three years we are going to study English together. If you took English as your advanced class, this class will have a special priority for you, and for this purpose this reader has been designed in the first place. If you take English as a basic class, the information provided in the reader will nevertheless be useful for you.

We hope that we will not only have a great time together but also some profound, controversial and educative discussions. Moreover, we would like to encourage you to <u>take part</u> in these discussions. English is a language, a means of communication and it wants to be spoken and not only written. Do not be afraid of making mistakes (we make a lot of them ourselves) because making mistakes is the basis for learning things.

In general, be open to the language and expose yourselves to it as often as possible by reading, listening to or watching diverse media to improve and become better and more confident in using it. You will see, understanding English will become easier and easier the more often you are in contact with it. Use the technological possibilities to benefit from them.

This reader is designed to be a basic book of resources you may want to refer to for nearly all the basic questions that may come up during your time in the *Oberstufe*. You will find advice on how to tackle exams, basic information on all the topics dealt with in class and a How-To-Section of manuals we have designed in the English department as well as some (boring O) notes and advice from the ministry.

Yours,

The Laurenz English Department

General Aspects	
Curriculum Secondary Level	4
Performance Assessment	5
Tackling Exams	6
Tackling Exams – Task Identifyers	14
Model Exam and Solution	16
Manual Section	
1 Common Stylistic Devices	24
2 List of connectives	25
3 Useful Phrases for Discussions	26
4 Analysing – Some Basic Ideas	27
5 Analysing Cartoons	28
6 Analysing (Political) Speeches	32
7 Analysing Fictional Texts	35
8 Mediation	44
9 Analysing – Dealing with Short Stories	46
10Analysing – Characterisations	48
11 Analysing Songs and Poetry	50
12 Writing Comments	54
13 Writing – Letters	58
14 Writing – Speech Script	60
15 Writing – Dialogues/Interviews	62
16 Writing – Summaries	66
17 Writing – Newspaper Articles and Report	67
18 Analysing – Non-Fiction Texts	68
19 Notes on Vocab – General	74
20 Notes on Vocab – Transition Phase	77
21 Notes on Vocab – Qualification Phase	85
Basic Information on Class Topics – Transition Stage	
1 The Digital Age	91
2 Think Globally, Act Locally	93
3 Crossing Borders	97
Basic Information on Class Topics – Qualifying Stage	
1 The United Kingdom	99
2 India	106
1/2/3 Multiculturalism and Immigration	110
3 The United States	115
4 Globalisation	124
5 Visions of the Future – Science, Technology, Utopia and Dystopia	128
6 Shakespeare	132
7 The Media	136
8 Society and Democracy	140
Language Kit – Avoiding German-English Interference	145
Resource and Link Section	150

CURRICULUM SECONDARY LEVEL

Transition Phase (Year 10)

1. The Digital Age

- 2. Teenage Dreams and Nightmares
- 3. Think Globally, Act Locally
- 4. Crossing Borders

Qualifying Phase (Years 11/12)

Topics in *italics* are dealt with by the advanced class only.

The United Kingdom: Tradition and change in politics and society

- monarchy and modern democracy (B1)
- multicultural society (B1)

<u>India</u>

- from postcolonial experience to rising nation (B3) / Faces of a rising nation (B3)

The United States

- Freedom and justice: myths and realities (B2)
- The role of the United States in international politics at the beginning of the 21st century (C2)

Globalisation

- Studying and working in a globalised world (A1; C2)
- Globalisation and global challenges: *economic and ecological issues (C1; C2)* / lifestyles and communications (C2)

Visions of the future:

- ethical issues of scientific and technological progress (B4; C1)
- utopia and dystopia (B4; C1)

The impact of Shakespearean drama on young audiences today:

- study of extracts (tragedy) (B4)
- study of film scenes (B4)

All these topics shall cover the following obligatory aspects

- A. Everyday realities and future prospects of young adults
 - 1. life plans, study, education, international professions English as a lingua franca
- B. Political, social and cultural realities and their historical backgrounds
 - 1. The United Kingdom in the 21st century self-understanding between tradition and change
 - 2. The American Dream visions and everyday realities in the United States
 - 3. Postcolonialism everyday realities in a further Anglophone cultural area
 - 4. The meaning of literature and media for the individual and society
- C. Global challenges and visions of the future
 - 1. Progress and ethics in a modern society
 - 2. Opportunities and risks of globalisation

The full PDF-file can be consulted at:

https://www.standardsicherung.schulministerium.nrw.de/abitur-gost/fach.php?fach=3

PERFORMANCE ASSESSMENT

Your performance in this class will be assessed as following: 50 % written/oral exams 50% miscellaneous contributions to class or work ("Sonstige Mitarbeit"/SoMi)

As the requirements for exams should be obvious, there are numerous options which will be taken into account to mark your SoMi-performances.

- oral contributions in class, taking part in discussions, active participation in group work
- use of English in class (this may seem a bit odd, but speaking German during group work or in class will not be regarded positively)
- presentation of homework
- (written) tests
- finalised elements of class work, such as
 - (oral) presentations
 - protocols
 - portfolios

ENGLISH DEPARTMENT

• essays or papers (e.g. book reviews, comments, argumentative texts)

Generally, you are expected to participate on your own initiative, only in rare cases I am going to ask you directly to present your results. However, you are encouraged to do any of the finalised elements whenever you want. In these cases, talk to me in advance and we will save some lesson time for you to present your work and discuss it.

TACKLING EXAMS

As 50% of your overall mark is based on how you perform in exams, here is a guideline on how to structure and survive them. The following guideline will be structured according to the expectations and criteria in the *Zentralabitur*. There will be a paragraph for each aspect and finally the expectations as they are presented in your final exams with further hints on what to consider.

But first, an overview about possible exam formats as presented in the official curriculum (*Kernlehrplan*).

1	Aufgabenart 1: Schreiben mit einer weiteren integrierten Telikompetenz (Klausurtell A) Eine weitere Telikompetenz in isolierter Überprüfung (Klausurtell B) Gewichtung: Klausurteil A ca. 70-80% – Klausurteil B ca. 30-20%				
	Klausurteil A: Schreiben mit einer weiteren inte- grierten Teilkompetenz	Klausurteil B: Eine weitere Teilkompetenz			
		Sprachmittlung			
		 schriftliche oder auditive Textgrundla- ge(n) aufgabengeleitete Wiedergabe eines oder mehrerer schriftlicher oder münd- 			
		licher Texte in der jeweils anderen Sprache			
	Schreiben – Leseverstehen	Hör-/Hörsehverstehen			
	 schriftliche englischsprachige Textgrundla- ge(n), ggf. ergänzt um visuelle Materialien 	 auditive/audiovisuelle englischsprachi- ge Textgrundlage(n), 			
1.1	 mehrgliedrige Aufgabenstellung, darunter mindestens eine Aufgabe zum integrierten Leseverstehen 	 Überprüfung des Hör-/Hörsehverste- hens (mittels halboffener und/oder ge- schlossener Aufgaben) 			
	 ggf. Aufgabe mit Bezug auf die Textgrund- lage(n) des Klausurteils B (Sprachmittlung oder Hör-/Hörsehverstehen) 	Sprechen			
		ein oder mehrere kurze englischspra- chige schriftliche, auditive/audiovisuelle oder visuelle Impulse			
		 aufgabengeleitete Überprüfung des Sprechens (zusammenhängendes Sprechen und/oder an Gesprächen teilnehmen) 			
	Schreiben – Hör-/Hörsehverstehen	Leseverstehen			
	auditive/audiovisuelle englischsprachige Textgrundlage(n)	 schriftliche englischsprachige Text- grundlage(n) 			
1.2	 mehrgliedrige Aufgabenstellung, darunter mindestens eine Aufgabe zum integrierten Hör-/Hörsehverstehen 	 Überprüfung des Leseverstehens (mit- tels halboffener und/oder geschlosse- 			
	ggf. Aufgabe mit Bezug auf die Textgrund- lage(n) des Klausurteils B (Leseverstehen)	ner Aufgaben)			

2	Aufgabenart 2: Schreiben mit zwei weiteren integrierten Tellkompetenzen
	Schreiben – Leseverstehen – Hör-/Hörsehverstehen
2	schriftliche englischsprachige sowie auditive/audiovisuelle englischsprachige Textgrundlage(n)
	mehrgliedrige Aufgabenstellung, darunter mindestens eine Aufgabe zum integrierten Lesever- stehen und eine Aufgabe zum integrierten Hör-/Hörsehverstehen

3	Aufgabenart 3: Schreiben sowie zwei weitere Telikompetenzen in isolierter Überprüfung Gewichtung: Klausurteil A ca. 50% – Klausurteil B ca. 50% (je ca. 20-30%)					
	Klausurteil A: Schreiben	Klausurteil B: Zwei weitere Teilkompetenzen				
	Contribution	Leseverstehen				
		 schriftliche englischsprachige Text grundlage(n) Überprüfung des Leseverstehens (mit tels halboffener und/oder geschlosse ner Aufgaben) 				
		UND				
		entweder				
	Schreiben	Sprachmittlung				
	Aufgabe mit Bezug auf die Textgrundla-	 schriftliche oder auditive Textgrundla ge(n) 				
3	ge(n) des Klausurteils B (Leseverstehen und/oder Sprachmittlung bzw. Leseverste hen und/oder Hör-/Hörsehverstehen) oder	 aufgabengeleitete Wiedergabe in ei nem oder mehreren schriftlichen ode mündlichen Texten in der jeweils ande ren Sprache 				
	Aufgabe ausgehend von einem oder meh-	oder				
	reren kurzen englischsprachigen schriftli- chen, auditiven/audiovisuellen oder visuel-	Hör-/Hörsehverstehen				
	len Impulsen	auditive/audiovisuelle englischsprach ge Textgrundlage(n)				
		 Überprüfung des Hör-/Hörsehverste hens (mittels halboffener und/oder ge schlossener Aufgaben) 				
		oder				
		Sprechen				
		 ein oder mehrere kurze englischsprachige schriftliche, auditive/audiovisuelle oder visuelle Impulse 				

The ministry has already announced that exam format 1.1 (Part A: Writing including reading comprehension; Part B: Mediation) will be the format for the *Zentralabitur*. This is the same format you encountered in Exam No.3 in form 10, so you are already familiar with this and we might focus on this format in the following.

TACKLING EXAMS

Language vs content

You can score points for your language performance and your content performance, the language part making 60% of the total and the content part 40%. This is how your language performance will be assessed in every exam.

<u>Language</u>

All three parts are awarded with maximum score of 21 points each, so there is a total of 63 points to score.

Text Composition (Kommunikative Textgestaltung)

First of all, you are expected to write <u>one coherent and consistent text</u>, i.e. your whole class test should be like an essay. **Do not** write "Task 1", start writing down what you think is right and continue with the other tasks in the same way. The reason for this is that we want you to be able to show your skills in what is called text composition (*"Kommunikative Textgestaltung"*). You are expected to write a text that shows that you are able to connect the tasks using connective structures, simply a text that can be understood easily and guides the reader through your stream of thought.

	Anforderungen	
	Der Prüfling	
1	richtet seinen Text konsequent und explizit im Sinne der Aufgabenstellung auf die Intention und den Adressaten aus.	6
2	beachtet die Textsortenmerkmale der jeweils geforderten Zieltextformate.	4
3	erstellt einen sachgerecht strukturierten Text.	4
4	gestaltet seinen Text hinreichend ausführlich, aber ohne unnötige Wiederholungen und Um- ständlichkeiten.	4
5	belegt seine Aussagen durch eine funktionale Verwendung von Verweisen und Zitaten.	3

So what does this mean?

1	AUFGABENBEZUG richtet seinen Text konsequent und explizit im Sinne der Auf- gabenstellung auf die Intention und den Adressaten aus.	 eindeutiger Aufgabenbezug durchgängig in allen Teilaufgaben Beachtung der Anforderungsbereiche (ausgewiesen durch die Operatoren)
2	TEXTFORMATE beachtet die Textsortenmerk- male der jeweils geforderten Zieltextformate.	 Teilaufgabe 1: Quellenangabe zum Ausgangstext: Autor, Titel, Textsorte, Thema, Publikation, Ort und Jahr, ggf. Ausgabe/Auszug, Intention/Zielgruppe; keine Zitate und in der Regel keine Textverweise Teilaufgaben 1 und 2: sachlich-neutraler Stil/Register; verdichtendes Wiedergeben, Darstellen und Erläutern (expositorisch-darstellendes Schreiben) Teilaufgabe 3.1: subjektiv-wertender Stil/Register; Erörtern, Begründen, Schlussfolgern und argumentativ sinnvolle Textstruktur mit einem gewissen Maß an Rhetorisierung (argumentierendes Schreiben) Teilaufgaben 1 – 3.1: present tense als Tempus der Textbesprechung; keine short forms Teilaufgabe 3.2: Bezug auf klar definierte Normen der Textsorte (anwendungs-/produktionsorientiertes kreatives Schreiben), z.B. bei Rede/Debattenbeitrag: Adressatenbezug durch Bezugnahme auf das Vorwissen und den Erfahrungshorizont des Adressaten
3	TEXTAUFBAU erstellt einen sachgerecht strukturierten Text.	 Geschlossenheit des Gesamttextes (Teilaufgaben 1, 2 und 3.1, bzw. Teilaufgaben 1 und 2 in Vorbereitung von 3.2) sach- und intentionsgerechte Untergliederung in grafisch erkennbare Sinnabschnitte

TACKLING EXAMS

		 inhaltlich-thematische Geschlossenheit der Sinnabschnitte und Her- stellung eindeutiger Bezüge leserfreundliche Verknüpfung der Sinnabschnitte und Gedanken (z.B. durch gliedernde Hinweise, Aufzählung, Vor- und Rückverweise, zusammenfassende Wiederaufnahme zentraler Punkte, Konnektoren)
4	ÖKONOMIE gestaltet seinen Text hinrei- chend ausführlich, aber ohne unnötige Wiederholungen und Umständlichkeiten.	 Beschränkung auf relevante bzw. exemplarische Punkte/ Details/ Zitate Vermeidung von Redundanz, z.B. durch Rückverweis auf bereits Dargelegtes (statt Wiederholung) abstrahierende Zusammenfassung mit konkreten, exemplarischen Belegen (statt langwieriger, textchronologischer Bearbeitung) Bereitstellung und ggf. Erläuterung verständnisrelevanter Informationen
5	BELEGTECHNIK belegt seine Aussagen durch eine funktionale Verwendung von Verweisen und Zitaten.	 Gebrauch von Textverweisen (Zeilenangabe, Hinweis auf Absatz) zur Orientierung des Lesers der Darstellungsabsicht angemessener Gebrauch wörtlicher Zitate aus dem Ausgangstext (Teilaufgaben 2 und 3) Konventionen des Zitierens: z.B. Zeilenangabe, Absatzangabe, wört- liches Zitieren, sinngemäßes Zitieren (Paraphrase), ggf. unter Kenn- zeichnung von Auslassungen oder Ergänzungen, Wechsel zwischen in den Satz eingebauten Zitaten, eingeleiteten Zitaten und Zitaten in Klammern

Language skills (Verfügbarkeit sprachlicher Mittel)

This refers primarily to the body of vocabulary you know. There are three types which are differentiated here. First, there is your general knowledge of vocab, which should be your basis. Then, there is topic-related vocabulary, which you should have learned in advance and which will be available in the Dropbox. Finally, there is vocabulary you should know for your analysis tasks. You can find this in the How-To section of this reader. Generally, you should constantly try to improve and expand your vocab through reading or watching English media.

	Anforderungen	
	Der Prüfling	
6	löst sich vom Wortlaut des Ausgangstextes und formuliert eigenständig.	4
7	verwendet funktional einen sachlich wie stilistisch angemessenen und differenzierten all- gemeinen und thematischen Wortschatz.	6
8	verwendet funktional einen sachlich wie stilistisch angemessenen und differenzierten Funk- tions- und Interpretationswortschatz.	4
9	verwendet einen variablen und dem jeweiligen Zieltextformat angemessenen Satzbau.	7

So what does this mean?

löst gan	GENSTÄNDIGKEIT st sich vom Wortlaut des Aus- ngstextes und formuliert eigen- indig.	•	Wiedergabe von Inhalten/Sachverhalten in "eigenen Worten" keine wörtliche Wiedergabe auswendig gelernter Textpassagen (z.B. aus der Sekundärliteratur) Hinweis: Ein punktuell das Sprachmaterial des Ausgangstextes kreativ verarbeitendes Vorgehen ist durchaus erwünscht.
SCI ver lich und	LGEMEINER und THEMATI- HER WORTSCHATZ rwendet funktional einen sach- h wie stilistisch angemessenen d differenzierten allgemeinen d thematischen Wortschatz.	•	Inhalts- und Strukturwörter: treffende und präzise Bezeichnung von Personen, Dingen und Sachverhalten, Berücksichtigung von Bedeutungsnuancen (auch Modalitäten) stilistisch angemessene Wortwahl (register: formal, neutral, in- formal) Verwendung von Kollokationen, Redewendungen etc.

		• Variation der Wortwahl, Vermeidung von "Allerweltswörtern" (z.B. think, want, good, thing)
:	8 TEXTBESPRECHUNGS- und TEXT- PRODUKTIONSWORTSCHATZ verwendet funktional einen sach- lich wie stilistisch angemessenen und differenzierten Funktions- und Interpretationswortschatz.	 Teilaufgabe 1: Vokabular zur Wiedergabe und Zusammenfassung von Inhalten Teilaufgabe 2: Vokabular der Textanalyse (auch Filmanalyse, Ana- lyse von Karikaturen, Grafiken etc.) Teilaufgabe 3.1: Vokabular der Meinungsäußerung/Bewertung Teilaufgabe 3.2: Anpassung des Wortschatzes an das geforderte Textformat
	9 SATZBAU verwendet einen variablen und dem jeweiligen Zieltextformat an- gemessenen Satzbau.	 durchgängig klare Syntax, Verständlichkeit beim ersten Lesen (Überschaubarkeit, Eindeutigkeit der Bezüge, Satzlogik) dem jeweiligen Zieltextformat angemessene Satzmuster: z. B. Hypotaxe (Konjunktional-, Relativ-, indirekte Fragesätze), Parata- xe, Aktiv- und Passivkonstruktionen, Gerundial-, Partizipial- und Infinitivkonstruktionen. Adverbiale

See also Manual 19: Notes on Vocab!

Linguistic correctness (Sprachliche Korrektheit)

This is quite obvious: Your essays should be as free from mistakes as possible.

	Anforderungen	
	Der Prüfling	
bea	achtet die Normen der sprachlichen Korrektheit im Sinne einer gelingenden Kommunikation.	
10	Wortschatz	9
11	Grammatik	8
12	Orthographie (Rechtschreibung und Zeichensetzung)	4

So what does this mean?

10	WORTSCHATZ	 8-9 P.: Der Wortgebrauch (Struktur- und Inhaltswörter) ist fast über den gesamten Text hinweg korrekt. 6-7 P.: Vereinzelt ist eine falsche Wortwahl feststellbar. Abschnitte bzw. Textpassagen sind weitgehend frei von lexikalischen Verstößen. 2-5 P.: Einzelne Sätze sind frei von lexikalischen Verstößen. Fehler beim Wortgebrauch beeinträchtigen z.T. das Lesen und Verstehen. 0-1 P.: In nahezu jedem Satz sind Schwächen im korrekten Gebrauch der Wörter feststellbar. Die Mängel im Wortgebrauch erschweren das Lesen und Textverständnis erheblich und verursachen Missverständnisse.
11	GRAMMATIK	 7-8 P.: Der Text ist weitgehend frei von Verstößen gegen Regeln der Grammatik. Wenn Grammatikfehler auftreten, betreffen sie den komplexen Satz und sind ein Zeichen dafür, dass die Schülerin/der Schüler Risiken beim Verfassen des Textes eingeht, um sich dem Leser differenziert mitzuteilen. 5-6 P.: Es sind vereinzelt Verstöße gegen die Regeln der Grammatik feststellbar. Jedoch sind Abschnitte bzw. Textpassagen weitgehend frei von Grammatikfehlern. Das Lesen des Textes wird durch die auftretenden Grammatikfehler nicht erschwert. 2-4 P.: Einzelne Sätze sind frei von Verstößen gegen grundlegende Regeln der Grammatik Grammatikfehler beeinträchtigen z.T. das Lesen und Verstehen. 0-1 P.: In nahezu jedem Satz ist wenigstens ein Verstoß gegen die grundlegenden Regeln der Grammatik feststellbar. Diese erschweren das Lesen erheblich und verursachen Missverständnisse.
12	ORTHOGRAPHIE	 4 P.: Der gesamte Text ist weitgehend frei von Verstößen gegen orthographi- sche Normen. Wenn vereinzelt Orthographiefehler auftreten, haben sie den Charakter von Flüchtigkeitsfehlern, d.h. sie deuten nicht auf Unkenntnis von Regeln hin. 2-3 P.: Es sind zwar durchaus Orthographiefehler feststellbar, jedoch sind Abschnitte bzw. Textpassagen weitgehend ohne Verstoß gegen orthographi-

TACKLING EXAMS

sche Normen. Das Lesen des Textes wird durch die auftretenden Orthogra-
phiefehler nicht wesentlich beeinträchtigt.
• 0-1 P.: Einzelne Sätze sind frei von Verstößen gegen orthographische Nor-
men, Orthographiefehler beeinträchtigen z.T. das Lesen und Verstehen.
• 0 P.: In nahezu jedem Satz ist wenigstens ein Verstoß gegen die Regeln der
Orthographie feststellbar. Die Orthographiefehler erschweren das Lesen er-
heblich und verursachen Missverständnisse.

<u>Content</u>

The content related performance depends on the subject and the operators given. Usually, Part A is constructed this way:

1. Comprehension (12 points)

2. Analysis (16 points)

3.1 Evaluation: comment (14 points) or

3.2 Evaluation: re-creation of text (14 points)

So, there is an overall number of 42 points to score for your content performance. The mediation part will make up 45 points (see Manual 7!), so there will be an overall score of 150 points.

Important note: Your exam should be **one coherent essay** with **transitions** from one task to the next! Do **not** write "Task 1", "Task 2", "Task 3" as a heading! However, you may note down the task you refer to **with a pencil** at the margin.

Introduction:

Note: This is **not explicitly given in the assignments**, but **nevertheless expected of you**.

- first sentence: What type of text? Title? Published when and where? Author?
- state the topic of the text, not simply its content
- use your own words
- do not give too many details
- do not use quotations or direct speech
- do not give your personal opinion
- use the present tense
- connect the tasks, e.g. The following text/ the given material is a summary/ description/ outline focusing on the author's views concerning the importance of Shakespeare today and the conclusions he draws for teaching Shakespeare. → refer to the tasks but do not copy them.

1. Comprehension:

ENGLISH DEPARTMENT

- do not simply summarize but keep the specific task you are working on in mind
- look at the operator
- use your own words, no copying or quoting

2. Analysis:

- key aspects to be looked at/explained in detail as set by task 2, e.g.: Analyse the way the author uses structure, argumentative techniques and language to attract and persuade his readers.
- connective sentences: In order to persuade his readers the author makes use of (e.g.) a contrastive/antithetical ... structure.

In the opening part of the text ...

When it comes to argumentative techniques, the author employs ...

TACKLING EXAMS

TACKLING EXAMS

With regard to/concerning/with respect to language it becomes/is obvious that the author makes use of/concentrates on

give examples (direct or indirect quotations) for important stylistic devices or other writing techniques, explain them/their meaning and <u>analyse their effect</u>

some remarks on quoting

- quoting line directly from the text:
- (l. 5)
- (ll. 5 7)

quoting lines using paraphrases:

- (cf. l. 5)
- (cf. ll. 5 6)
- quoting multiple lines:
- (l. 5, ll. 10-13, l. 25)
- (cf. l. 5, ll. 10-13, l. 25)

quoting lines when you want to give examples of multiple passages (e.g. the personal pronoun "we" in a speech analysis):

- (e.g. l. 5, l. 13, ll. 16-17).

Do not write: *In line 3/in lines 3 to 5 the author says ... or: *Lines 5 – 10 say ...

- always combine findings on language/structure and content/message
- use connectives to link your ideas
- do not write about every detail
- use evidence from the text to support your findings
- use the present tense
- end with a conclusion that does not only sum up your findings, but also refers back to the task, states your results on a more abstract level

3.1 Evaluation – Comment:

- key aspects to be looked at as set by task 3, e.g.: Discuss the author's view on Shakespeare's
 relevance for young people. Refer to your background knowledge as well as texts by Shakespeare and film adaptations you know.
- connective sentence from task 2 to 3: What is the question/topic you are going to discuss/comment on etc., which is usually the author's view on a certain problem. Referring to the example above, a good transition could look like this: In the author's view/according to the author/ the author holds the view that it is not necessary for sixth-formers to read one of Shakespeare's plays. He argues that young people today are not capable of reading and understanding Shakespearean literature anymore. However, Shakespeare was and still is one of the greatest writers ever. This conflict leads to the question whether Shakespeare is still relevant for young people today. (→after that, you start with your pros and cons, but do **not** use expressions like *My first pro argument/ My second pro argument/... Now I come to the con arguments.)
- Do not start with your personal opinion, e.g. *I think/In my view/As far as I'm concerned...
- if a decision is asked for: give reasons for and against the matter
- give an example to support (each of) your points
- in the last part, come to a logical conclusion and clearly state your own opinion of the topic based on your findings/experiences/statistics
- conclusion: round your essay off with a final statement

see also Manual "Writing Comments"

<u>or</u>

3.2 Evaluation - Re-creation of text (Creative Writing)

- Write a connective sentence to this format as well. Example task: After the "incident" with Jess (and Jules), Joe stays in the street behind the disco and thinks about what happened. Write an interior monologue from his perspective.
- A "recreation of text" transition could look like this: *Referring to the (ideas of the)* text/dialogue/conversation/conflict ... a possible interior monologue/ could read as follows:

There are several text forms that have certain requirements. Here is a list of text formats, see the Manual section for detailed information.

		Schreibkompetenz entwickeln unter Beachtung wesentlicher Merkmale der Textformate:			
Zieltextformate	Relevanz	Kommunikationssituation	Inhalt & Struktur (Text/Aufgabe)	Sprache	
letter (formal letter, letter to the editor; per- sonal letter)	persönlicher u. be- ruflicher Alltag, Teilnahme am gesellschaftlichen Leben	Autor/ Adressat/ Schrei- banlass Kategorien: informal oder formal (z.B. letter to the editor)	Differenziert nach formal/ in- formal: • Adressen, Datum • Anrede, Schlussformel • Anfang: Small talk, Bezug- nahme • Struktur (Themenverknüp- fung, Argumentation)	gemäß Kon- text/Kategorie: infor- mal vs. formal English	
speech script (talk, pub- lic/formal speech, [de- bate] state- ment)	Geplantes zusam- menhängendes Spre- chen in Studium/ Be- ruf/ Gesellschaft: <i>statement</i> (auch De- battenbeitrag), <i>talk</i> , <i>speech</i>	 Ort und Zeit Anlass Redner (ggf. rollenge- bunden) Thema/Intention Zuhörer/Publikum 	Einleitung: Begrüßung, Einstieg, Zieltransparenz Hauptteil: • Struktur/Verknüpfung • Fakten/Wertungen Abschluss: z.B. Zusammenfas- sung, Appell, Diskussi- on/Präsentation	gemäß Kontext: informal vs. formal English, rhetorische Mittel	
newspaper ar- ticle (report, comment)	Schreiben für Print- und Digitalmedien	Ort und Zeit Autor - Anlass Differenziert nach Medium sowie <i>report/comment:</i> • Zielgruppe • Intention • Themaaufbereitung	Differenziert nach re- port/comment: u.a. hinsichtlich • Fakten, Wertungen • Objektivierung, Personalis- ierung/Dramatisierung • Einzelfall, Kontext	gemäß Kontext: informal vs. formal English, vgl. mediale Vorgaben: z.B. Britain: popular paper/quality paper; school magazine	
(written) in- terview	strategisch geschick- tes, strukturiertes Fragen / Antworten / (Re-)Agieren →Person/ Thema/ Meinung	Ort und Zeit Interviewer - Interviewpartner Anlass - Thema - Intention	Interviewer: neutral, unemo- tional, wertungsfrei • Einleitung (Thema, Gesprächspartner) • strukturierte Fragesequenz, Abschluss • Interviewpartner: rollen- und kontextgemäß	<i>spoken English</i> (kontextgemäß)	
nur LK: Ausge- staltung, Fort- führung oder Ergänzung eines literari- schen Aus- gangstextes (narrative Tex- te, dramatische Texte, <i>film</i> <i>script</i>)	kreatives Schreiben / literarisch- ästhetische Dimensi- on der Sprachver- wendung	Ende, Füllen von Leerstelle	Erzählperspektive oder anderem n im Text (z.B. <i>interior monologue</i>) orlage; hierbei Berücksichtigung .B. bei narrativem Text: <i>ac</i> -	In der Regel Fortführun des Erzähl- stils/Sprachstils	

TACKLING EXAMS – TASK IDENTIFYERS

Task Identifyers are central in almost every task you encounter in class, so here is a list of them. They tell you precisely what you are expected to do. They are matched with certain fields of requirement ("Anforderungsbereiche"), which are explained as well.

PART A: WRITING AND READING COMPREHENSION (INTEGRATED)

TASK IDENTIFYER	EXPLANATION	EXAMPLE
describe	give a detailed account of what sb./sth. is like	Describe the soldier's situation as depicted in the text.
outline	give the main features, structure or general princi- ples of sth.	Outline Panem's history as presented in this excerpt.
point out	find and explain certain as- pects	Point out the aspects that underline
state	present the main aspects of sth.	State the author's key reasons for taking a gap year briefly and clearly.
summarize, write a summary sum up	give a concise account of the main points or ideas of a text, issue or topic	Summarize/Sum up the information about green energy given in the text.
2. ANALYSIS (FIELD OF REQ	UIREMENT II)	
TASK IDENTIFYER	EXPLANATION	Example
analyse	describe and explain in de- tail	Analyse the way(s) in which atmosphere is cre- ated in the opening scene.
characterise; give / write a characterisa- tion of	provide a thorough analysis of a character	Give a characterization of the protagonist in the excerpt.
compare	show similarities and differ- ences	experts quoted in the text.
examine	describe and explain in de- tail	Examine the opposing views on social class held by the two protagonists.
explain	make sth. clear by giving reasons for and details, as- pects of sth.	Explain the protagonist's obsession with money.
illustrate	use examples to explain or make clear	Illustrate the way in which according to the au- thor school life in Britain differs from that in Germany.
interpret	explain the meaning, pur- pose or message of sth.	Interpret the sonnet, focusing on the way struc- ture and imagery are used to express the speaker's insight into the nature of time.
3.1 EVALUATION: COMME	NT (FIELD OF REQUIREMENT III)	
TASK IDENTIFYER	EXPLANATION	Example
assess	express a well-founded opinion on the nature or quality of sb./sth.	Against the background of the ideas put forward in the text, assess the importance of learning lan- guages for a young person's future.
evaluate	express a well-founded opinion on the nature or quality of sb./sth.	Evaluate the success of the steps taken so far to reduce pollution as described in the text
comment (on)	state one's opinion clearly and support one's view with evidence or reasons	Comment on the writer's view on gender roles.

TACKLING EXAMS – TASK IDENTIFYERS

compare	show similarities and differ- ences	Compare the opinions on education held by the experts quoted in the text.
discuss		Discuss the message of the cartoon, referring to work done on the British monarchy.
3.2 EVALUATION: RE-CRE	ATION OF TEXT (FIELD OF REQUIREMEN	nt III)
TASK IDENTIFYER	EXPLANATION	Example
write (+ text type)	produce a text with specific features	Write the ending of the story / a letter to the edi- tor / a dialogue, etc. Write an interior monologue that reflects the character's view of the situation and her / his feelings.

PART B: MEDIATION

The assignment for Mediation contains a situational context with advice on the addressee and the required form of text.

TASK IDENTIFYER	EXPLANATION	SAMPLE TASK
explain	0	Based on the text on environmental policy ex- plain the principle of waste separation in Ger- many in an email to your British friend.
outline	give a concise account of the main points or ideas of a text clarifying culture-related as- pects if necessary Outline Mr. Liu's career in Germany in an for your international school project's on <i>Successful Immigrants.</i>	
present	main points or ideas of a text	For an international school project in the EU present the relevant information on the image of migrants in German media in a formal email to your partner school in Spain.
summarize, sum up	main points or ideas of a text	Sum up Manuel's views on working and living as a gap year student in India for your blog. Where necessary add information which might help to avoid possible misunderstandings.
write (+ <i>text type</i>)	produce a text with specific fea- tures	Using the information in the German text write an article in English for your project website in which you inform your Polish partners how to get a sports scholarship at a German university.

English Advanced Class 2 Gerling Q1 Exam No. 3 – Option 2 11 April 2016

The 2016 American Presidential Elections

Tasks:

Part A: Writing with integrated reading comprehension (70 %, 105/150 points)

- Outline Melissa Schwartz' view on Donald Trump's Presidential Election Campaign and possible consequences she mentions of Trump being elected President. (Comprehension: 12 points)
- 2. Analyse the way Melissa Schwartz tries to convince the reader of her view. Consider her line of argument, choice of words and stylistic devices. (*Analysis: 16 points*)
- 3. Choose one of the following tasks:
- a) Discuss Schwartz' view on Donald Trump being President. Refer to the article as well as work done in class. *(Evaluation: comment, 14 points)*
- b) Imagine you are an eighteen-year-old American and you are allowed to vote for the first time in this year's election. Write a letter to the editor of *The Huffington Post* in which you comment on Schwartz' article. (*Evaluation: re-creation of text, 14 points*)

Material: Factual text (comment of the international press).

Number of words: 553.

Source of text: Melissa Schwartz, "If Donald Trump Becomes President, It's on You", in: *The Huff-ington Post*, 07 March 2016. http://www.huffingtonpost.com/melissa-schwartz/if-donald-trump-becomes-President-its-on-you_b_8752730.html <u>Approved resources:</u> Monolingual and bilingual dictionary

Part B: Mediation (30 %, 45/150 points)

4. Your American online pen friend Jenna is doing a school project on international opinions on the 2016 American Presidential elections and candidates. As she cannot speak German, she asked you to give her a random view from Germany on Bernie Sanders. You want to refer to a text by Karsten D. Voigt.

Write an e-mail to Jenna in which you summarise Voigt's opinion on Sanders and the political state of America in general. Where necessary add information which might help to avoid possible misunderstandings. *(Mediation, 18 points)*

Material: Factual text (comment of the international press).

Number of words: 244.

<u>Source of text:</u> Karsten D. Voigt, "Der Gegenentwurf", in: *Cicero. Magazin für politische Kultur*, No.3/March 2016, p. 34.

Approved resources: Monolingual and bilingual dictionary

ENGLISH DEPARTMENT

Name:___

<u>Text basis Part A - Melissa Schwartz: If Donald Trump Becomes President, It's on</u>

<u>You</u>

Melissa Schwartz is Vice President of Strategy & External Affairs at The Bromwich Group, an American consulting firm. She published her article in the online newspaper <u>The Huff-</u> ington Post on 07 March 2016.

Enough is enough.

For months, political scientists have looked at the strange spectacle that is the Donald J. Trump for President campaign and have largely come away with one of two opinions.

5 For some, Trump is a caricature, a buffoon saying the most outlandish things to get screen time, debasing American politics, and pushing every possible limit of what should be appropriate for a Presidential campaign.

For others, he represents a very substantial part of the electorate that has had enough of both parties and the <u>stalemates</u> in Washington. They want change. They

10 want radical change. And they believe that Trump will force that change by waking politicos up to the anger in the country and the risk that comes with maintaining the status quo.

Both groups might have been right a few months ago. But Trump's candidacy has <u>morphed into</u> something different and far worse.

- 15 In the past several months, Trump has called Mexican immigrants rapists and bragged about building a wall akin to the Great Wall of China to keep them out of the United States. In mid-November, he promoted inaccurate statistics suggesting that most white people are killed by black people. When a black protester was accosted when disrupting one of his political rallies, he stated that "maybe he should have
- 20 been <u>roughed up</u>." Last month, he suggested a mandatory Muslim registry. This week, he called for a "total and complete" ban on all Muslims entering the United States.

Words matter. Proposals matter. This man is ahead in every national poll. People are flocking to attend his events. The media continues to give <u>airtime</u> to his

25 antics.

Enough is enough.

Donald Trump is not just capturing the discontent of Americans who are sick of D.C. He's stirring the hatred that lies just beneath the surface of so many of our communities. [...]

ENGLISH DEPARTMENT

30 He's not the cancer. He's a symptom, but a symptom capable of <u>aggravating</u> the underlying disease.

It's not just his hate speech that should alarm you. We have had candidates for decades that have based their campaigns on arousing hate and fear. But they have not been <u>frontrunners</u>.

- 35 If elected President, Donald Trump has the power to enact policies by executive action to round up people of a specific race and take unilateral action against them. If elected President, Donald Trump really can spend your taxpayer dollars to build walls, tear families apart, and deny federal benefits and protections to people of a specific race. [...]
- 40

Your voice matters. Your dollar matters. Your vote matters.

If Donald Trump is elected President, it will be my fault. Your fault. Your neighbor's fault. Your co-worker's fault. American voters have the opportunity to do something about this.

Instead of rolling our eyes and changing the subject because it seems absurd,

- 45 local communities need to recognize the hate he is stirring and act now. Elected leaders should identify and address frustrations that are boiling just beyond view (or, more often than not, stop looking the other way when it is in plain sight). Educators should use this moment to teach their students about what responsible leadership does and does not look like. Members of the media should stop being enter-
- 50 tained by his hate speech and call it what it is. They should stop making excuses to justify ratings. [...]

Enough is enough.

Annotations: 9 <u>stalemate</u> – a disagreement or a situation in a competition in which neither side is able to win or make any progress **14** (<u>to</u>) <u>morph into</u> – to change, or make somebody/something change, into something different **20** (<u>to</u>) rough <u>sb.</u> <u>up</u> – to hurt somebody by hitting or kicking them **24** <u>airtime</u> – time someone is shown on television, the internet or in print media **30** (<u>to</u>) <u>aggravate</u> – to make sth. worse than before **34** <u>frontrunner</u> – sb. who is in the lead of sth.

Text basis Part B: Karsten D. Voigt: Der Gegenentwurf

Karsten D. Voigt was the coordinator of German and American Cooperation for the German government from 1999 to 2010. He wrote his article in the political magazine Cicero in March 2016.

Bernie Sanders, 74, nennt sich einen "demokratischen Sozialisten". Das ist nicht nur ein selbst gewähltes Etikett, sondern ein Versprechen, das er nicht müde wird zu wiederholen, und es bedeutet: Umverteilung. Den Reichen soll genommen, den Armen gegeben werden. Damit trifft der Senator aus Vermont vor allem den Nerv der jungen Amerikaner. [...] Seine Reformen – die europäischen Sozialdemokraten vertraut vorkommen dürften – bezeichnet er als "politische Revolution". [...]

Wie das Rennen auch ausgehen mag, eines scheint jetzt schon klar zu sein: Sanders' Kandidatur wird die Demokratische Partei selbst dann verändern, wenn er sich trotz seiner Anfangserfolge am Ende doch nicht gegen Hillary Clinton durchsetzen sollte.

Bernie Sanders' Erfolge sind ebenso wie die Erfolge Donald Trumps bei den Republikanern Ausdruck einer tiefen Unzufriedenheit mit "Washington" und dem dortigen politischen Establishment. Sie sind aber auch Ergebnis einer in den vergangenen Jahrzehnten immer größer werdenden Polarisierung in der amerikanischen Politik und in den amerikanischen Medien: Wenn im Zuge dieser Polarisierung die Demokraten einen Schritt nach links gingen, bewegten sich die Republikaner mindestens zwei Schritte nach rechts.

Ist diese Entwicklung der Ausdruck einer politischen Krise in den USA? Eindeutig ja! Aber nur dann, wenn man Krise nicht – wie in Deutschland üblich – als Scheitern definiert, sondern als Chance zur Erneuerung. In diesem Sinne ist die Mehrheit der Amerikaner der festen Überzeugung, dass ihr Land aus Streit und Krisen erneuert und gestärkt hervorgehen wird. Bernie Sanders verändert, selbst dann, wenn er nicht Kandidat werden sollte.

- Introduction (cf.In this extract from the article "If Donald Trump Becomes President, It's on
You" published by the online newspaper "The Huffington Post" on 07 March
2016 Melissa Schwartz deals with the consequences of a possible presidency
of Donald Trump in the United States. Schwartz is Vice President of Strategy
and External Affairs at The Bromwich Group, an American consulting firm. In
her argumentative essay she draws an all in all negative scenario of a possible
Trump presidency.
- Bridge to task 1 This essay looks at the various consequences she presents if Donald Trump becomes President and her view on his presidency in general. This is followed by an analysis of her way of arguing and presenting her point of view. The essay concludes with a discussion , if her views on Trump are justified or not. / The essay concludes with a letter to the editor from the point of view of an American first time voter who comments on Schwartz' article.

Comprehension (AFB I) – Schwartz views on Trumps campaign

Consequences of a Trump presidency

Bridging comprehension and analysis (tasks 1 & 2)

Analysis (AFB II) – Line of argument The essay concludes with a discussion, if her views on Trump are justified or not. / The essay concludes with a letter to the editor from the point of view of an American first time voter who comments on Schwartz' article. Schwartz presents the reader with quite a negative outlook on Donald Trump's campaign. She first refers to his controversial perception in the public discourse, stating that he is either seen as a buffoon or as a representative of those who are fed up with official Washington, yet his campaign has taken

a negative course, according to the author. To prove this she refers to statements Trump has made over the past few months about his aims as President, including the closing of the border to Mexico and a ban on Muslims entering the US. She then accuses Trump of exploiting the people's hatred and taking advantage of it from his position as a frontrunner.

Her outlook on the consequences of a possible Trump presidency is also quite alarming. She fears the discrimination of single races and taxes being used to treat people unequally. She appeals to the reader that they are responsible to prevent Trump from becoming President as well as to the media to throw light on Trump's real aims and give up good ratings for a better cause.

Having pointed out Schwartz' views on Trump's campaign as well as the possible consequences of him being President, this essay now focuses on the ways the author tries to convince her readers of her view, with special attention to her line of argument, choice of words and stylistic devices.

Schwartz structures her essay in a linear way, trying to persuade the reader that a possible Trump presidency would be highly dangerous for America. She begins with the description of public views on Trump as a ridiculous candidate (ll. 1-7) as well as his depiction as a representation of the discontent of Americans with the current political elites (ll. 8-14). She then continues with an enumeration of measures Trump wants to employ if elected President (ll.15-22) and, foreshadowing the consequences, performs an entirely negative assessment of a possible Trump presidency (ll. 23-39). She concludes her essay with a fierce, almost accusing appeal to her readers that they will be to blame if Trump becomes President (ll. 40-43), not forgetting to request the media to enlighten the public about Trump's evil intentions and the disastrous consequences for America his presidency will have, in her view (ll. 44-52).

Choice of words To underline her point of view, Melissa Schwartz makes use of a certain choice of words. Overall it can be stated that she uses extremely negatively connoted words to highlight Trump's dangerousness, e.g. "enough" (l.

MODEL EXAM AND SOLUTION

1), "worse" (l. 14) "hatred" (l. 28), "aggravating" (l. 30) or "fault" (l. 41). Moreover, she addresses her reader directly using inclusive pronouns like "we" (e.g. l. 32,) and "our" (ll. 28, 44) to create a bond with her readers, but also "you" and "your" (e.g. ll. 32, 41) to remind the readers of the consequences of their choice in the elections. In addition, the author employs contrastive registers. Rather colloquial words like "spectacle" (l. 2), "buffoon" (l. 5) or "brag" (l. 16) show the public's downplaying of Trump's danger compared to formal words like "debase" (l. 6), "mandatory" (l. 20), "aggravate" (l. 30), "enact" (l. 35) or "unilateral" (l. 36) to highlight the serious consequences and her concerns about a possible Trump presidency.

Stylistic devices

Furthermore, the author uses stylistic techniques and devices to make her essay more readable and vivid. For example, she makes use of the metaphor "stir hatred" (l. 28), which shows that Trump is the cause of envy and hatred among the American people. Next to this she makes use of medical imagery. The terms "cancer", "symptom" and "disease" (ll.30 f) create a vivid picture of what she expects Trump to be like if elected President. Using a serious disease like "cancer", which is often terminal, she makes her point unmistakeably clear. On the other hand, this metaphor is also an exaggeration as the American nation will also survive a possible Trump presidency.

Through the use of enumerations and parallelisms (cf. ll. 15-22; l. 23; ll. 35-39; ll. 40-42) she makes her argumentation more memorable and dramatic. The triple repetition of the phrase "enough is enough" (ll. 1, 26, 52) in the beginning, middle and ending of the text has the same effect and further emphasises her view. Finally, her changeable sentence structure is striking. Schwartz especially uses short sentences when she wants to warn the readers of Trump as well as when she directly appeals to them (cf. ll. 23-25; ll. 40-43). This has the effect of a concise and urgent request and shows that preventing Trump from becoming President is of the utmost importance to her.

Summary of analysis Bridging analysis and comment

Comment (AFB III, 3.1) – briefly picking up the author's background and view Arguments challenging Schwartz' view All in all Schwartz ensures that her arguments and examples justify her criticism of Trump. She depicts him as a real threat for America as we know it and that Americans should open their eyes and start taking him seriously. Yet, her point of view is very one-sided as she does not focus on the reasons why Trump "is ahead in every national poll" (l. 23). If Schwartz is right about her view on Trump shall be discussed in the following.

Schwartz argues from the position of a consulting firm and may have political interests in mind as well as economical, so she is biased. She does understand the need for change, referring to the many Americans who are unhappy with the political establishment. However, she strongly opposes a possible Trump presidency.

On the one hand, we have to see that Trump clearly is an entertainer and selfpromoter. He has come to fame through a reality TV-show and that is what he is known for best. It seems hard to believe that he is interested in doing serious politics and will depend on experts that will suggest far more realistic approaches. In addition, Trump is a businessman and not a politician. He constantly exaggerates to win votes. His success is also a clear sign that there is something going wrong in America, e.g. the gap between rich and poor and a widespread xenophobia. Otherwise a man like Trump would not be rising like this.

	and there are many illegals in the US waiting for their citiz deal with them first and make them part of our country	zenship. We should		emerge str America ev
	to say that I disagree with Mrs Schwartz. The dangers sh not real dangers in my view. Immigration has been a prob	e puts forward are	Sanders	political cri failiure, like
Line of argument	You" by Melissa Schwartz, I would like to provide a different eighteen years old and this year's elections will be my first. In her article dated 07 March 2016 the author states that T will be dangerous for America. After carefully studying the	Frump's presidency	Voigt's view on	lishment, a tion over t the two big These tend
Reference and intro	With reference to your article "If Donald Trump Become		The political state of America	Even if San achieved to
Date Salutation	To the editor,	11 April 2016	of Sanders' political style	nate, and t fers to his mocrats ho
text	Trump "is ahead in every national poll" (l. 23). Imagin American first time voter who likes to share his view on letter to the editor could read as follows:	ing being a young	Summary of Voigt's article – description	governmen 2016. So, as Sanders' se live up to. 1
sis Bridging analysis and re-creation of	cism of Trump. She depicts him as a real threat for America that Americans shoul open their eyes and start taking him point of view is very one-sided as she does not focus of	a as we know it and a seriously. Yet, her	Intro and reference to project	Thank you ject. I did s former coo
Summary of analy-	Americans, but I highly doubt that Trump is the right choic All in all Schwartz ensures that her arguments and examp		Salutation	Dear Jenna
	Schwartz' assessment of Trump. He seems to be a dangerd dent. However, Schwartz' argumentation disregards the re success. The next President should aim for more equality	easons for Trump's and fairness for all	 Mediation (task 4) Subject	Subject: Pr
Conclusion / Deci- sion	History has proven that agitators and populists should mated. Although Trump seems like a ridiculous caricature constantly winning votes and delegates and should be se frontrunner in a presidential election campaign. There	of a politician, he is en as what he is, a fore, I agree with	Name and address	Gregory Ho 221b Baker 08544 Prin
	can core ideals and values, e.g. that everyone can make i they are willing to work hard, no matter their religious How does this work if a whole religion should be banned and the border to Mexico should be closed? America has a try of immigrants and would cease being one.	t in this country if belief or ethnicity. d from the country	Summary Closing phrase	Myself and All in all, th Trump see Sincerely,
view	erly uses the people's fears about the unknown like popul cans trust him. Let me give you an example. Quotes by Hitle Trump and read out to random Trump supporters, and the views because they took them for Trump's. This is a dange if people trust politicians blindly. Moreover, his approach	er were assigned to ey supported these erous development		Trump. Fun cles on this What I agree proposed b is going to
Arguments sup- porting Schwartz' view	On the other hand, there is no doubt that Schwartz' is righ ment of Trump's comments as racist, homophobic and xe erly uses the people's fears about the unknown like popul	enophobic. He clev-		This count vention in Trump. Fu

MODEL EXAM AND SOLUTION

nmary	This country has been most successful when there was only little state inter- vention in people's affairs, and I feel that it will continue to do so under Mr Trump. Furthermore, I would appreciate more objectivity in your future arti- cles on this matter. What I agree with, however, is Mrs Schwartz' criticism on the ban on Muslims proposed by Trump. This is indeed discriminating, and I hope that Mr Trump is going to change his view on this in the future. I have a lot of Muslim friends myself and therefore I cannot support Mr Trump's proposal at all. All in all, the problem of illegal immigration has to be tackled properly and Mr
sing phrase	Trump seems to be the best choice to manage this. Sincerely,
sing pin ase	Sincerery,
ne and address	Gregory House 221b Baker Street 08544 Princeton, NJ
diation (task 4) oject	Subject: Project on Presitential Campaign
utation	Dear Jenna,
ro and reference project	Thank you for your latest e-mail. I hope you're getting on well with your pro- ject. I did some research and came across an article by Karsten D. Voigt, a former coordinator of German and American cooperation for the German government. He wrote an article in the political magazine "Cicero" in March 2016. So, as you asked for, here are his views on Bernie Sanders.
nmary of Voigt's icle – description ianders' political le	Sanders' self-perception as a "democratic" socialist" is a promise he wants to live up to. He wants to take money from the rich and give it to the less fortu- nate, and that is why he is extremely popular with young Americans. He re- fers to his reform plans, which are similar to the views European social de- mocrats hold, as a political revolution.
e political state America	Even if Sanders might not become the Democratic candidate, he has already achieved to change the party. People are dissatisfied with the political estab- lishment, and that is why American politics have undergone a huge polarisa- tion over the past decades. This includes the further diverging gap between the two big parties.
gť s view on Iders	These tendencies are, according to Voigt, on the one hand a manifestation of a political crisis, but on the other hand seen as a chance in America and not as a failiure, like it is typical of Germany. Americans believe that their country will emerge stronger from this crisis, and Bernie Sanders has changed political America even if he might not become President.
nclusion	This is basically what Voigt has to say about Sanders. I hope this is going to help you with your project. Good luck with it! I look forward to hearing from you soon.
sing phrase	Love,



STÄDTISCHES GYMNASIUM LAURENTIANUM Fachschaft Englisch Manual 1

COMMON STYLISTIC DEVICES

literary term	explanation	example	effect on the reader
alliteration	recurrence of initial sound	The fair b reeze b lew,	draws attention to the phrase
		the white foam flew.	and is often used for emphasis
			also makes speech more
			rhythmic, gives it an almost
			musical rhythm
allusion	a reference to an event, literary work	I can't do that because I am	used to explain or clarify a
	or person	not Superman.	complex problem by sth. the
			reader is familiar with
amplification	repeats a word or expression	Love, real love, takes time.	emphasis
analogy	compares two different things that	He is flaky as a snowstorm.	illustration that sticks in the
	have some similar characteristics.		reader's mind
anaphora	repeats a word or phrase in succes-	In every town, in every	attention is drawn directly to
	sive phrases	house in every man, in every	the message of the sentence
		woman and in every child	
enumeration	makes a point with details	renovation included a spa,	emphasis and/or inclusion of
		tennis court, pool and	the reader
		lounge.	
euphemism	figure of speech intended to hide the	"the underprivileged" for	makes a problem seem less
	real nature of s.th. unpleasant or ta-	"the poor"	bad than it actually is, used to
	boo by using a mild or indirect ex-		weaken possible counter-
	pression		arguments
hyperbole	an exaggeration	Not even a thousand soldiers	Used sparingly, hyperbole ef-
		could keep me away from	fectively draws the attention
		her.	to a message that you want to
			emphasise
metaphor	compares two things by stating one	The eyes are the windows of	figurative expression that il-
	is the other (key words are forms of	the soul.	lustrates and emphasizes,
	"(to) be", unlike a simile)		sticks in mind
onomatopoeia	words that imitate the sound they	plunk, whiz, pop	makes a text more lively and
	describe		interesting
oxymoron	a two word paradox	joyful trouble, seriously	cause the reader to pause and
		funny	think for a bit, makes a seem-
			ing contradiction somewhat
			sensible
parallelism	uses words or phrases with a similar	Tell me and I forget. Teach	makes it easier to focus on the
	structure	me and I may remember. In-	message
		volve me and I will learn.	
personification	figure of speech in which inanimate	"The sun stepped out of the	makes a narration more inter-
	object, abstract concepts or living	clouds and smiled momen-	esting and lively
	things (plants, animals) are referred	tarily"	
ronatition	to as if they were human beings A word or a phrase gets repeated	Ence at least free at least then h	amphasis an aartain aanasta
repetition	A word or a phrase gets repeated numerous times in a text.	Free at last, free at last, thank God almighty we are free at	emphasis on certain aspects and ideas
	numerous times in a text.	last	anu iueas
rhetorical ques-	an assertion in the form of a ques-	"Who does not love choco-	to provoke, emphasise or ar-
tion	tion which strongly suggests a par-	late?"	to provoke, emphasise or ar-
uoli	ticular response	late:	gue
simile	an explicit comparison (using <i>as</i> or	like a bull in a china shop	illustrative use of emphasis
SHIIIC	<i>like</i>) between two distinctly different	My friend is as good as gold.	that sticks in mind
	things which have at least one fea-	my menu is as good as gold.	ulat SUCKS III IIIIIU
	ture in common		



STÄDTISCHES GYMNASIUM LAURENTIANUM

Fachschaft Englisch

LIST OF CONNECTIVES

Before you start writing: What is the task? Read the instruction carefully! Make some notes about what you want to say. These phrases will help you to structure your text and to organize your ideas.

Manual 2

Giving evidence	Adding ideas	Comparison	Order
 for instance, look at take , for example to illustrate this point, statistics/surveys show most scientists now agree that there is strong evidence that I saw this from first-hand experience I would like to draw your attention to the fact that 	 moreover further also likewise similarly equally in the same way besides again in addition 	 likewise both whereas the former (latter) but while the first (the second) similarly as as equally as well on the one hand, but on the other hand 	 to begin with to start with next above all there are three points I would like to make I'll focus on three issues First of all, secondly, then
Reason	Conclusion	Counter-argument	Condition
 therefore that is why for this (that) reason hence because (of) so consequently for this reason as a result the logical consequence is that based on these figures/facts this implies that 	 hence consequently accordingly as a result it follows that finally in conclusion as a final point, I'd like to 	 however nevertheless otherwise on the contrary yet, still, but, maybe, perhaps except for in spite of that is certainly true, but at the same time it is obvious that 	 if unless suppose that in case that provides that on the condition that



Fachschaft Englisch Manual 3

USEFUL PHRASES FOR DISCUSSIONS

Stating your case	Defending your case	Interacting with others
Beginning	Defending your point	Picking up sb's statement
 I would like to start by asking/ 	That's not what I was trying to	 I would like to comment on
saying/telling	say.	what X said about/come back
 Let me begin with 	 My point is that 	to
 As a start, 	 I see your point, but I still feel 	 If I may just remind you of
	 That's not quite what I mean. 	what X said about
	What I am saying is that	 As we have just heard from
Giving an opinion	Making suggestions	Interrupting politely
 In my opinion/view, 	• What about (+gerund)?	• May I interrupt you for a sec-
 To my mind, 	 If I were you, I would 	ond?
 I am of the opinion that 	 I would suggest/recommend 	 Excuse me, could you explain
	 I call for/request 	that again please?
 I am sure/convinced that 	• I call for / request	 Sorry, can I just make a point?
Cisis and a second second	Deally and the fact around the set	
Giving an example	Dealing with interruptions	Arguing against something
 For instance, look at 	• I haven't finished yet, if you	 I strongly criticise
Take, for example.	don't mind.	 I completely disagree with you
 Let me give you an example of 		on
what I mean by	 I haven't got to my point yet. 	 I would question that argu-
 To illustrate this point 	 Excuse me, could you just 	ment.
Giving evidence	Balancing	Disagreeing
 Statistics/surveys show 	• On the one hand, (but) on the	 I'm sorry, but I don't agree at
 Most scientists now agree/ 	other hand	all.
There is strong evidence that	Although we mustn't forget	 I think you might be mistaken
• I know this from first-hand ex-	0	 I'm not sure it is as simple as
perience./I'd like to draw your		that.
attention to the fact that	same time it is obvious that	• I believe X was mistaken when
		he/she
		 I'm afraid things are not simple
		as X would have us believe.
Structuring	Playing for time	Asking for an opinion
		0 1
There are three points I would		How do you feel about this?
like to make.	What I'm trying to say is	• What is your view/position
 First of all, Secondly, 	So you mean that	on
Thirdly, Finally,	 I'm glad you asked me that. 	 I would be very interested to
		hear X's opinion on this.
Adding	Giving in (to some extent)	Checking understanding
 I'd like to add that 	 Even if that is so 	• Do you really mean to say?
 It is also important to know 	 That's probably true, but 	• So, if I understand you cor-
 Another reason is that 	 Possibly/I agree in principle, 	rectly,
	but	 What exactly do you mean by
Introducing a new point	Correcting misunderstandings	Supporting someone
 I would like to raise another 	5	 That's a good idea.
point.	misunderstanding.	 I fully support X's view.
 What we haven't discussed yet 		 I wholeheartedly support X's
 what we haven't discussed yet is the question whether/if 		 I wholeheartedly support X s statement.
 We should also discuss what 	That's not quite what I meant	
		 That sounds very convincing.
this means for	Don't get me wrong. I meant	
	Drawing conclusions	Agreeing
Emphasising		 Absolutely/Exactly/ I totally
• I would like to emphasise that	 That's why/For this reason, 	
	 That's why /For this reason, The logical consequence is 	agree.
• I would like to emphasise that		



STÄDTISCHES GYMNASIUM LAURENTIANUM

Fachschaft Englisch

ANALYSING - SOME BASIC IDEAS

Manual 4

Always start with an introduction:

- name text type/title/author/year of publication
- refer to the task(s) you have to do (e.g.: "In the following, the atmosphere which is created in this extract will be analysed by looking at a variety of stylistic devices and the narrative style.")
- present your hypothesis/hypotheses (your ideas/answers to the task, which you have to prove in the main part of the analysis (e.g. "The atmosphere in this extract is very tense and menacing. The protagonist feels threatened by the upcoming events. This atmosphere is created by the use of a variety of adjectives, metaphors and similes. On top of that, the use of a first-person narrator strengthens the impression of an imminent danger.")

<u>Main part:</u>

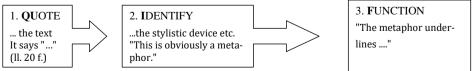
- prove your hypothesis/hypotheses by analysing the text
- remember the three obligatory steps of an analysis:

1. quote the text (WHERE?) Don't forget:

- o "inverted commas"
- o the line numbers: l. for a specific line; ll. for more than one line
- write down "cf." (=vgl.) after the *indirect quote*.
- **2. identify** the stylistic/rhetorical device, narrative technique, cinematic device (in films), line of argumentation (structure) etc. (WHAT?)
- 3. analyse the function of it (questions you could ask here: Why does the author use this technique/device here and not a different one? What is the effect on the reader/listener?) (WHY/HOW?)
- Always be sure that your analysis refers to your hypothesis, i.e. also to the task that you are working on.

Conclusion:

- here you could summarize the results of your hypothesis. (E.g.: "By using many negatively connotated adjectives, illustrative metaphors and some similes the author manages to create an atmosphere of menace and threat. The reader can feel the danger that the situation poses for the protagonist, because his thoughts and feelings are directly mediated to the reader by the use of a first-person narrator.")
- you could also look behind the scenes (e.g. why does the speaker have this or that intention)
- You always have to try and *analyse* each stylistic means (in more or less detail) *within its specific context*. The concept of **QUIFF**ing (double f because the function aspect is the most important one) can help you remember this:



NOTE: Of course you may also start with the identification (step 2) and then quote the stylistic means ("We can find an interesting example of irony. It says, '...' " (l. 5)). However, you cannot leave out any of the 3 steps. It helps a lot to imagine that your reader does *not* have the original text in front of him!

ENGLISH DEPARTMENT



STÄDTISCHES GYMNASIUM LAURENTIANUM Fachschaft Englisch Manual 5

ANALYSING - CARTOONS

Purpose

Describing cartoons is a rather advanced activity. In doing so, it is important to include the picture's impact and the artist's intention.

A cartoon is a comical or satirical drawing in a newspaper or a magazine. Its aim is to criticise current, especially political, events in a humorous and funny way. It usually consists of a drawing (pictorial part) and a comment or caption (a short title), which is usually placed below the drawing (textual part). 1.1 Preparation

Take a close look at the cartoon and make up your mind how you want to structure your description. What is your first impression of the picture? What is important, what is especially or obviously striking? Is there anything else that should be considered?

1.2 Content and Structure

Step 1: Author and source

- What is the title or the caption of the cartoon/picture?
- Who is the artist/photographer (if known)?
- Where was it published?

Step 2: Description

- Describe the people, objects and the setting in the cartoon/photo in detail: What action is taking place?
- Which visual elements are employed?
- Which (historical, political, social) events or issues may have inspired the cartoon?

It is difficult to follow a picture description if you jump randomly from one aspect to another. It is therefore important that you make sure that your description is logically structured, e.g.:

- from the left to the right (or the other way round)
- from the front to the back (or the other way round)
- from the centre to the outside (or the other way round)
- from generals to details



STÄDTISCHES GYMNASIUM LAURENTIANUM

h Manual 5

ANALYSING - CARTOONS

Step 3: Symbols, functions and effects

Cartoonists often use pictures and words to express their personal opinions. What tools are used to convey a certain message?

- humour
- caricature
- symbols
- stereotypes
- labels
- analogy to another historical or current event
- references to popular culture, art, politics, etc.
- speech bubbles
- \rightarrow What do the symbols stand for?
- \rightarrow Which group/person does the cartoon focus on?
- Note: For this step see also Manual 1 Common Stylistic Devices

Step 4: Meaning and Evaluation

- What is the message of the cartoon?
- Do you think the cartoon is effective in conveying its message? Is the pictorial presentation convincing?
- What do you think about the author's view on the issue? Do you agree with him/her? Why/why not?
- 1.3 Tense

When describing and analysing a cartoon, use the present progressive and the simple present. The use of the passive form is also recommended.

1.4 Practice

There is an uncountable number of cartoons available on the internet. You might google the keywords "cartoons", "political cartoons" "cartoon [topic you search]". Three examples of cartoon collections are

www.cartoonbank.com (Cartoon archive from "The New Yorker")

www.cartoonstock.com (huge database, high resolution cartoons cause charges) www.glasbergen.com (Website of cartoonist Randy Glasbergen, sorted by topic)



Fachschaft Englisch Manual 5

ANALYSING - CARTOONS

Source: http://www.ego4u.de/de/cram-up/writing/picture-description

Bildarten und Perspektiven	
Betrachter	viewer
Bild	picture, image
Gemälde	painting
Foto	photograph / photo
Porträt	portrait
Landschaftsbild	landscape painting
Froschperspektive	worm's eye view
Vogelperspektive	bird's eye view
Aufteilung	
Vordergrund	foreground
Hintergrund	background
im oberen Teil	in the upper part
im unteren Teil	in the lower part
im linken Teil	in the left part
im rechten Teil	in the right part
im mittleren Teil	in the central part
davor	in front of
dahinter	behind
neben	next to
rechts	on the right
links	on the left
in der Mitte	in the middle
von vorn	from front
von hinten	from behind
von oben	from above
von unten	from below
der 2. von links/rechts	the second from left/right
Sonstiges	
künstliches Licht	artificial light
Tageslicht	daylight
gedämpftes Licht	subdued light
helle Farben	light colours
dunkle Farben	dark colours
grelle/laute Farben	loud colours
kontrastreich	contrasty
Fluchtpunkt	vanishing point
Fluchtlinie	vanishing line

Infos zum Künstler und Entstehungsjahr

(Bild) ist ein Gemälde von (Maler), das (Jahr) ent- stand.	(image) is a painting by (artist), painted in (year).
(Bild), (Jahr) gemalt, ist eine Arbeit von (Maler).	(image), painted in (year), is a work by (artist)
(Maler) malte (Bild) im Jahre (Jahr).	(artist) painted (image) in (year).



Fachschaft Englisch

ANALYSING - CARTOONS

Manual 5

(Bild) ist ein berühmtes Gemälde von (Maler).	(image) is a famous painting by (artist).
Beschreibung der Szene	The sister and taken in (slass)
Das Foto wurde in (Ort) aufgenommen.	The picture was taken in (place). The photo was taken at (party).
Das Foto wurde bei (Feier) gemacht.	
Das Bild zeigt eine Szene aus Es ist ein Bild von (Ort, Person, Szene).	The picture shows a scene from
Das Bild beschreibt (Szene).	It's an image of (place, person, scene). The picture describes (scene).
Das bild beschielbt (Szene).	The picture describes (seene). The picture shows (place, person, scene) from a dis-
Das Bild zeigt (Ort, Person, Szene) aus der Ferne.	tance.
(Ort, Person, Szene) wird aus (Vogelperspektive/) gezeigt.	(place, person, scene) is shown from (a bird's eye view/).
Man sieht von (oben/hinten/) auf (Ort, Person,	You look at (place, person, scene) from
Szene).	(above/behind/).
Was ist zu sehen	
Auf dem Bild kann man sehen.	In the picture you can see
(Position: links/rechts/) ist / sind	(position: on the left/right/) there is / are
(Position: links/rechts/) kann man sehen.	(position: on the left/right/) you can see
ist (Position: links/rechts/)	is (position: on the left/right/)
Wirkung	
verleiht dem Bild Tiefe.	gives the impression of depth.
(Person) scheint den Betrachter anzusehen.	(person) seems to look at the viewer.
Seine / Ihre Augen scheinen dem Betrachter zu folgen.	His / Her eyes seem to follow the viewer.
Die Figuren sehen aus, als wären sie dreidimensional.	The figures look as if they exist in three dimensions.
Der Betrachter hat den Eindruck, dass die Personen auf dem Bild lebendig sind.	The viewer has the impression that the people in the pic- ture are alive.
Die Aufmerksamkeit des Betrachters richtet sich auf	The viewer's attention is focused on
Der aufmerksame Betrachter wird feststellen,	To the alert eye it will become apparent
Die Blicke des Betrachters werden auf gelenkt.	The viewer finds it difficult to withdraw his eyes from
Das Bild wirkt lebendig / fröhlich / ausdrucksstark.	The painting is vivid / happy / expressive.
Das Bild stimmt den Betrachter (traurig/fröhlich).	The picture makes the viewer feel (sad/happy)
Das Bild regt den Betrachter an, über nachzudenken.	The picture inspires the viewer to think about
Intentionen	
Der Künster verwendet hauptsächlich (Farben/Formen/) The artist mainly uses (colours/forms/)
Wichtige Elemente werden hervorgehoben.	Important elements are highlighted.
Der Künstler / Fotograf / Maler verwendet, um auszu- drücken.	The artist / photographer / painter uses to express
Er / Sie will (wahrscheinlich) kritisieren / ausdrücken / darstellen.	He / She (probably) wants to criticise / express / show
Es ist offensichtlich, dass der Künstler kritisieren / ausdrü	- It is obvious that the artist wants to criticise / express /
cken / darstellen will.	show
Was der Künstler / Fotograf / Maler kritisieren / ausdrücken darstellen will, ist	/ What the artist / photographer / painter wants to criticise / express / show is
Worauf der Künstler / Fotograf / Maler aufmerksam machen will, ist	
Ich denke / glaube / bin mir sicher, dass	I think / believe / am sure that
Mir scheint es, dass	It seems / appears to me that
Das hier dargestellte Problem ist	The problem illustrated here is
symbolisiert	symbolises
ist typisch für	is typical of



Fachschaft Englisch Manual 6

ANALYSING – (POLITICAL) SPEECHES

General aspects of political rhetoric

The purpose of most political speeches is persuasion rather than information. There is always a (hidden, underlying) message involved, often related to certain attitudes and values of the speaker. A political statement intends to affect the listeners by making use of diverse structural and rhetorical devices. In order to understand and to be able to evaluate a political speech, one should consider the following aspects:

First (general) impres- sion	 topic, subject matter, general tone, issues and Purpose of the speech
Contents and structure	 salient and striking topics, important aspects organization of the text, arrangement of parts (e. g. introduction, main part or body, conclusion) train of thought, composition, line of argument
Circumstances of the	
speech/political context	• time and place/medium (e.g. TV, radio, face-to-face, internet)
	 position of the speaker (President, leader of a political party, leader of a protest movement, etc.)
	 audience (mass audience, a limited group of people)
	 occasion (election campaign, protest demonstration, political debate,
	 informal gathering)
	 genre and type (Presidential address to the nation, sermon speech at a
	 demonstration, campus speech, testimony)
Formal and stylistic de- vices	
a) language	 keywords and phrases
	 word groups/clusters related to a certain topic
	 different registers for different addressees (e. g. sophisticated language to address rich and/or educated people, use of dia- lect, etc.)
	 choice of words (colloquialisms, slang expressions, poetic expressions)
b) grammar	 sentence structure/syntax (use of main-/sub-clauses)
	 use of grammatical tenses (indirect references to history fu- ture, etc.)
c) rhetoric	 use of rhetorical questions and answers
	 use of contrast and oppositions (positive/negative, famil- iar/alien, near/ distant, etc.)
	 use of key symbols, slogans, stereotypes
	 abstractions and generalizations
	 use of grammatical persons (I, us, we-you, they: patterns of identification and solidarity or vice versa)
	 metaphors, personifications
	 allusions and references to history (American Dream, impor-
	tant political/ historical issues, good/bad times, tradition, fu-



STÄDTISCHES GYMNASIUM LAURENTIANUM

Fachschaft Englisch

ANALYSING - (POLITICAL) SPEECHES

Manual 6

d) manner of speak- ing/voice Evaluation	 repetitions (alliterations, anaphora); parallelisms comparisons, numbers, factual information irony, exaggerations, simplifications imperatives, emotionally-loaded words concentration on essential points vs. wordy insertions volume, tempo, stress, intonation, abrupt changes, pauses, rhythm Comment on the personal integrity of the speaker, the gen-
Evaluation	 Compare the speech/speaker to other political speeches/speakers. Was he/ she convincing?)

Knowing the speaker's objective is critical to analysing the speech, and should certainly influence how you study it.

- What is the speaker's goal? Is it to educate, to motivate, to persuade, or to entertain?
- What is the primary message being delivered?
- Why is this person delivering this speech? Are they the right person?
- Was the objective achieved?
- 1.6 The Audience and Context for the Speech

A speaker will need to use different techniques to connect with an audience of 1500 than they would with an audience of 15. Similarly, different techniques will be applied when communicating with teenagers as opposed to communicating with corporate leaders.

- Where and when is the speech being delivered?
- *If known*: What are the **key demographic features of the audience**? Technical? Students? Elderly? Athletes? Business leaders? How large is the audience?
- In addition to the live audience, is there an **external target audience** (e.g. on the Internet or mass media)? This is almost always the case with political speeches.
- 1.7 Speech Content and Structure

The content of the speech should be selected and organised to achieve the primary speech objective. Focus is important — extraneous information can weaken an otherwise effective argument.

The Speech Opening

Due to the primacy effect (i.e. things said in the beginning can be remembered better), words, body language, and visuals in the speech opening are all critical to speaking success.

• Was a hook used effectively to draw the audience into the speech? Or did the speaker open with a dry "*It's great to be here today.*"



Fachschaft Englisch Manual 6

ANALYSING – (POLITICAL) SPEECHES

- Did the speech open with a **story**? A **joke**? A startling **statistic**? A **controversial state ment**? A **powerful visual**?
- Did the speech opening clearly establish the intent of the presentation?
- Was the opening memorable?

→ Give reasons and examples

The Speech Body

- Was the presentation **focused**? i.e. Did all arguments, stories, anecdotes relate back to the primary objective?
- Were examples or statistics provided to support the arguments?
- Were metaphors and symbolism use to improve understanding?
- Was the speech organized logically? Was it easy to follow?
- Did the speaker **bridge** smoothly from one part of the presentation to the next? (Be careful in exam situations: if asked to analyse a political speech, these are almost exclusively abridged for time reasons. Therefore, omit this aspect if you encounter an abridged speech.)

The Speech Conclusion

Like the opening, the words, body language, and visuals in the speech conclusion are all critical to speaking success. This is due to the **recency effect (i.e. the general impression and key message the listener is supposed to take along)**.

- Was the conclusion concise?
- Was the conclusion memorable?
- If appropriate, was there a **call-to-action (i.e. a direct invitation to the reader to do something)**?



STÄDTISCHES GYMNASIUM LAURENTIANUM

Fachschaft Englisch

ANALYSING - FICTIONAL TEXTS

Manual 7

1. What are fictional texts?

There are 3 basic types of fictional texts:

- Narrative texts (e.g. novel, short story, fable)
- Dramatic texts (e.g. drama / play, screenplay / script)
- Poetry / lyrics

2. How do I analyse fictional texts in general?

First, it is of course important what the task wants you to do. Often, you have to deal with the use of language and so-called narrative techniques. This is what we like to focus on.

A – Use of Language

This often refers to the way a character speaks or how his/her thoughts are presented. What is important is the effect of the used means: usually, they amplify a character's views and actions and tell the reader something about the character itself.

Category	Examples
register	vulgar, slang, colloquial/informal, normal, formal, academic, technical; also
	sentence structure and grammar
choice of words	negatively connoted words (mind the context!); positively connoted words
	(mind the context!); euphemisms; idioms
stylistic devices	see manual 1
communicative strategies (even if not explicitly asked for, some of these can occur)	 use of contrasts: illustrating differences between two issues, things or circumstances to highlight and support a certain view use of personal experiences and anecdotes use of stereotypes and generalisations use of humour, irony or sarcasm, exaggerations / hyperbole

B – Narrative Techniques and Narrative Perspective

Narrative Techniques

The goal of every piece of fiction is to keep the reader interested in the story. Central elements here are the characters (who is involved?), the setting (where and when do the events occur? \rightarrow time and place) and the plot (what happens?).

Structure	 (How) is the text structured? What timespan does the narration cover? What is the relation between acting time and narrating time? Which conflict is the story based on? How does the action develop - or stagnate? Are there any leitmotifs?
Characters	flat/round characters, protagonist vs. antagonist, minor character(s), hero(ine), antihero, outward appearance, behaviour, relationship to other characters, di-

ENGLISH DEPARTMENT



Fachschaft Englisch Manual 7

ANALYSING – FICTIONAL TEXTS

	rect or indirect characterisation (see also Manual Characterisation)
Setting (=time and place)	 scenery, mental climate, basic mood, social environment, atmosphere Does the scenery/setting itself imply any symbolism (e.g. thunderstorm = danger, large city = liveliness, anonymity, etc.) What is the effect on the audience? What intention might the author/playwright have had?
Language/style	level of speech, manner of speaking, style, syntax, choice of words, inner mono- logue, chain of associations, stream of consciousness, register

Narrative Perspective

You have probably dealt with this in your German lessons already. Yet, there are technical terms () in English which cannot simply be translated from German. Let's take a look at them.

Questions to ask:

- 1. From whose point of view is the story told?
- 2. How much can/does the narrator know?
- 3. Whose feelings are revealed?

Definitions:

Narrator (*Erzähler*): The "voice" that tells a story. Unless it is an autobiography, the narrator is *not* identical with the author/writer.

Point of view (*Erzählperspektive*): The perspective from which characters, events, etc. are presented in a fictional text. The chosen point of view has a strong effect on the reader; for example, we tend to respond more sympathetically to a character whose mind we "enter", as we experience for ourselves what the character goes through. In the course of many stories the point of view changes to make reading more interesting.

	First person narrator (NOT: I narra-	Third person narrator (NOT: personal narrator!)
	tor!)	
German	Ich-Erzähler	personaler Erzähler
His	The narrator is a character in the	The narrator stands outside the story and uses the
func-	story and uses the first person singu-	third person ("he", "she" or "they") to refer to the
tion in	lar ("I"). This narrator may be either	characters.
the	the protagonist or a minor character,	
story	who is just a kind of observer/witness	
Point of	As first person narration presents the	If the narrator presents the events mainly from the
view:	action through the eyes of only one	perspective of only one character, he is called a third
limited	character, the narrator has a limited	person limited narrator, i.e. he "limits" himself to
	point of view. The reader tends to	the perspective of this character and has therefore a
	identify with the narrator, but the	limited point of view. The character from whose
	narrator is unreliable . That means, as	perspective the story is told is called focaliser .
	the narrator is highly subjective, we	
	cannot always trust his words.	



STÄDTISCHES GYMNASIUM LAURENTIANUM

Fachschaft Englisch

Manual 7

ANALYSING - FICTIONAL TEXTS

Point of	inexistent	If the narrator can (at least theoretically) look into
view:		the minds of all characters and tell us about their
unlim-		thoughts and feelings, he is called a third person
ited		omniscient (allwissend) narrator. with an unlim-
		ited point of view. He can look into the past, tell
		about the present and also anticipate the future.
Point of	inexistent	If the narrator knows or reveals nothing about the
view:		characters' internal thoughts, feelings, and motiva-
objec-		tions but sticks to the external facts of the story only,
tive		the narrator is called objective third person narra-
		tor. (Not very common!)

Introduction	Einleitung
 The text deals with/is about 	Der Text handelt von
The theme of the text is	Das generelle Thema des Textes ist
The text is composed of/consists of	Der Text besteht aus
 Three/two different parts can be distinguished 	Man kann drei/zwei Abschnitte unterscheiden
The first part runs from line to line	Der erste Teil geht von Zeile bis Zeile
 At the beginning of the text, 	Am Anfang des Textes
The author begins by saying	Der Autor/Die Autorin beginnt damit, dass
At the end of the text,/Finally,/Lastly,	Am Ende des Textes/Schließlich/Letztendlich
The first part forms the introduction	Der erste Abschnitt bildet die Einleitung.
The author's main/central/principal idea is	Die Kernthese des Autors ist
• In the conclusion, the author states that	In seinem Fazit sagt der Autor, dass
 In the final part, the author concludes that 	Im letzten Abschnitt schließt/schlussfolgert der Autor (damit)
	dass
The Author	Der Autor
 The author thinks/says/believes that 	Der Autor denkt/sagt/glaubt, dass
 According to the author,/In his/her view, 	Laut Autor /Seiner/Ihrer Meinung nach
 The author illustrates his/her point of view with 	Der Autor veranschaulicht seine Sichtweise/Ansicht mit
 The author makes a comment on 	Der Autor kommentiert / äußert sich dahingehend /bemerkt,
	dass
 The author is convinced that 	Der Autor ist davon überzeugt, dass / ist der Überzeugung,
	dass
• The author's judgements are (un)realistic/(not) objec-	Die Beurteilungen /Das Urteil des Verfassers ist
tive/unfounded/well-founded	(un)realistisch/(nicht) objektiv/nicht fundiert/sehr fundiert
• The reader can sympathise with the author's view on	Der Leser kann für die Meinung des Verfassers zu Verständ-
	nis aufbringen.
• The author expresses doubts on/questions regarding	Der Autor äußert Zweifel an/ Fragen bezüglich
The author makes remarks on	Der Verfasser bemerkt zu / merkt zu… an
The intention/aim/objective of the author is	Ziel / Aussageabsicht des Autors ist
The author portrays believable characters.	Der Autor zeichnet glaubhafte Charaktere.
• The author gives a detailed/vague description of	Der Autor bietet eine genaue/vage Beschreibung von/der/des

The text/plot/story	Der Text / Die Handlung / Die Geschichte
• The story is told from the perspective of	Die Geschichte wird aus Perspektive/Sicht erzählt.
• The plot is set in	Die Handlung spielt in (Zeit und/oder Ort)
The text is written in an ironical tone.	Der Text ist ironisch geschrieben.

ENGLISH DEPARTMENT



Fachschaft Englisch Manual 7

ANALYSING - FICTIONAL TEXTS

 The text contains comical elements. 	Der Text beinhaltet komische Elemente.
 The setting of the action is unreal/imaginary. 	Der Ort der Handlung ist unwirklich / bildlich / phantasiehaft.
 The action becomes more/less intense 	Die Ereignisse werden intensiver / spannender.
 The situation seems quite absurd 	Die Situation erscheint recht absurd / irrwitzig / abwegig
Suspense is created because/by	Spannung wird durch erzeugt.
The ending of the story is believable	Das Ende der Geschichte ist glaubhaft.

The structure	Struktur
The exposition gives information about	Die Exposition / Einführung informiert über
The first scene introduces	Der erste Satz stellt vor.
 The starting point for the action is 	Die Handlung beginnt
The conflict reaches its climax in	Der Konflikt erreicht seinen Höhepunkt am / bei…
The turning point is indicated by	Der Wendepunkt wird durch angedeutet / angezeigt
• In the last scene,	In der letzten Szene / Situation
 This play/story has a happy/tragic ending. 	Das Stück / Die Geschichte hat ein glückliches / tragisches Ende.

Purpose (of texts)	Zweck eines Textes
• The author wants to arouse the reader's interest.	Der Autor möchte das Interesse des Lesers wecken / erregen
The text appeals to	Der Text spricht an.
He tries to manipulate	Er versucht, zu beeinflussen / manipulieren.
He wants the reader to become aware of	Er möchte den Leser auf aufmerksam machen.
The text addresses young/poor/ people	Der Text richtet sich an junge / arme / Leute
• It is the author's objective to create a feeling of	Es ist das Ziel des Autors, ein Gefühl der / des zu erschaffen.
The author attempts to influence the reader.	Der Autor versucht, den Leser zu beeinflussen.
The advert suggests to the reader that	Die Werbeanzeige suggeriert dem Leser

The characters	Figuren
• The main/principal character (or: The protagonist) in	Die Hauptfigur der Geschichte ist
the story is	
The author characterises him/her as	Der Autor charakterisiert / kennzeichnet ihn als
He has many positive traits such as	Er hat viele positive Eigenschaften, wie z. B
His behaviour is marked by	Sein Verhalten ist geprägt / gekennzeichnet von
 Another essential quality is 	Eine weitere zentrale Eigenschaft ist
She shows her superiority by saying that	Sie zeigt ihre Überlegenheit dadurch, dass sie sagt
The protagonist lacks	Der Hauptfigur fehlt
As far as his outward appearance is concerned,	Soweit es sein Äüßerres betrifft,
She plays an important/a secondary / minor role	Sie spielt eine wichtige /nebensächliche / untergeordnete Rol-
	le

The action	Die Handlung
The action takes place in	Die Handlung spielt in
 The action develops in stages 	Die Handlung entwickelt sich über Phasen
The action progresses fast.	Die Handlung schreitet schnell voran.
The scene contains a flashback.	Die Szene enthält eine Rückblende.
The action is interrupted by	Die Handlung wird durch unterbrochen.
This is one of the central scenes.	Dies ist ein der zentralen Szenen / Vorfälle.
 The development of the action is slowed down by 	Durch wird die Entwicklung der Handlung verlangsamt.

Vocabulary	Wortschatz / Wortwahl / Vokabular
The vocabulary contains many colloquial expres-	Das Vokabular enthält viele umgangssprachliche Begriffe /
sions/technical terms	Fachbegriffe
This word/term expresses fear /	Dieses Wort /Dieser Ausdruck drückt Angst / aus.
• This word has a negative meaning/negative associations	Dieses Wort hat eine negative Bedeutung / negative Assoziati-
	onen/Verbindungen



Severitorum Fachschaft Englisch

ANALYSING - FICTIONAL TEXTS

Manual 7

 These phrases belong to the spoken language. 	Diese Sätze gehören der gesprochenen Sprache an.	
 The choice of words gives the text its romantic/ techni 	Die Wortwahl gibt dem Text seinen romantischen / techni-	
cal/ character.	schen/fachlichen Charakter.	
These expressions are typical of	Diese Ausdrücke sind typisch für	
Criticising the author	Kritische Auseinandersetzung mit dem Autor	
• I (dis-)agree with the author on	Ich stimme dem Autor bei (nicht) zu.	
I don't understand why he/she	Ich verstehe nicht, warum er/sie	
I consider it to be wrong/difficult to	Ich erachte es als falsch / schwierig zu	
This/ cannot be taken seriously because	Dies / kann nicht ernst genommen werden, weil	
I'd like to comment on	Ich würde mich gerne zu äußern.	
It has to be pointed out that	Man muss herausstellen / hervorheben, dass	
This statement contradicts his view of	Diese Aussage widerspricht seiner Ansicht von	
There is a contradiction in	Es gibt einen Widerspruch bei…	
It goes without saying that	Man muss nicht erst erwähnen, dass	
It is essential that	Es ist essentiell/wesentlich, dass	
This raises the question as to why he/she	Dies wirft die Frage auf, warum er/sie	
What really matters is	Was wirklich wichtig ist, ist	
This problem has nothing to do with	Diese Problem hat nichts mit zu tun.	
This is of no importance/significance for	Dies ist für ohne Belang /Wichtigkeit.	
• As far as is concerned,	Soweit es betrifft,	
• From this point of view,	Von diesem Standpunkt aus	
Generally speaking,	Im Allgemeinen / Allgemein gesehen	
As a matter of fact,	Eigentlich / Tatsächlich / In Wahrheit	
• In theory,, but in reality,	Theoretisch, aber tatsächlich	
Further useful expressions	Weitere hilfreiche Formulierungen	
To give an explanation for, he	Um zu erklären er	
• The author pretends to know	Der Autor gibt vor, zu wissen,	
• The author describes the characteristics of	Der Autor beschreibt die Eigenschaften /Charakteristika	
	von	
The article is based on	Der Artikel stütz sich auf	
The author makes an allusion to	Der Autor spielt auf an / macht eine Anspielung auf	
This sentence reveals the true character of	Dieser Satz offenbart den wahren Charakter	
He/She appeals to emotions rather than	Er/Sie spricht eher Emotionen als an.	
He quotes some experts as an example of	Er zitiert einige Experten als Beispiel für	
• The article relates/refers to	Der Artikel bezieht sich auf	
The text conveys the impression that	Der Text vermittelt den Eindruck, dass	
• The writer establishes a relationship between	Der Autor begründet eine Beziehung zwischen	
The author's theses are	Die Thesen des Autors sind	
• He supports his thesis with	Er unterstützt sein These / Kernaussage mit/durch	
	Seine Perspektive auf das Leben ist	
 His/Her outlook on life is 		
	Er nimmt eine positive / negative Haltung zu ein.	
 His/Her outlook on life is He takes a positive/negative view of The author generalizes about 	I	



Fachschaft Englisch Manual 7

ANALYSING - FICTIONAL TEXTS

a) narrative texts (e.g. novel, short story fable)

structure and plot	
plot	the author's selection and structure of action as a set of events connected by
	cause and effect that are meant to create suspense
exposition	the very beginning of a fictional text which introduces the main character(s),
	the theme, the setting and the atmosphere
rising action	an increase in suspense
climax	the moment when the conflict is most intense
falling action	a reduction of suspense
denouement (resolution)	the final outcome, when the conflict is resolved
open ending	the conflict remains unresolved \rightarrow the reader is left to reflect on possible reso-
	lutions
surprise ending	a sudden and unexpected turn of fortune/action
conflict	a struggle between different forces which produces suspense
internal conflict	a struggle between two opposing views/values which takes place in a charac-
	ter's mind
suspense	a feel i n g of tension/expectation
tension	the emotional strain caused by a conflict
foreshadowing	hinting at later events
flashback	an episode/event which interrupts the chronological order of a text and goes
	back in time to show what happened earlier
setting	place and time of a story/play
allegory	a text that may be understood on a superficial or factual level and a deeper,
	more philosophical level; the characters are often personifications of abstract
	ideas (e. g. evil, love, etc.)
epigram	a short, witty statement which may be written in prose or verse
(leit) motif	a theme/expression/object which recurs throughout the text and which refers
	to a certain person, situation or atmosphere

narration	
point of view/viewpoint	theperspectivefromwhichthecharacters,topicsandeventsarepresented (not the author!)
- unlimited point of view	- the reader can examine the action/characters from various angles
- limited point of view	- e.g. a first-person narrator who only has limited insight into the ac- tion/characters
narrator	person who tells the story (not the author!)
- omniscient narrator	- a narrator who seems to know everything
- third-person narrator	 - a narrator who stands outside the story and describes events in the third person
- first-person narrator	- a narrator who is a character in a story; this is a limited point of view
- witness/observer narrator	- a narrator who is a character in a story (protagonist or minor character)
 objective/reliable 	- a narrator who the reader can trust
- subjective/unreliable	- a narrator who the reader is critical of
stream of consciousness	the presentation of experience through the mind of one character in a text
interior monologue	a technique used within the stream of consciousness; a special kind of scenic
	presentation,
	often not in chronological order
mode of presentation	the way the writer narrates events; Darstellungsart *
- panoramic presentation	the narrator tells the story as a condensed series of events, summarizing in a
	few sentences what happens over a longer period of time
- scenic presentation	- the narrator shows an event in detail as it occurs, using dialogue, depicting
	thoughts and emotions, describing a scene, etc.
narrating time (= reading time)	the time it takes to relate an episode in a text (= reading time); it depends on
	the mode of presentation; Erzöhlzeit



STÄDTISCHES GYMNASIUM LAURENTIANUM

Fachschaft Englisch

ANALYSING – FICTIONAL TEXTS

acting time	the time from the beginning to the end of an episode in a text, this is usually
	longer than the narrating time because the writer can describe the passing of
	years in just a sentence; erzählte Zeit

Manual 7

b) drama (any work meant to be performed on stage or as a film)

play	any dramatic work intended to be presented on stage, in film or on TV
act	the major division of a drama; an act consists of scenes
scene	a subdivision in a drama
setting	the place and/or time in which an action takes place
comedy	a drama which deals with a (light) topic in a more amusing way; it always has a happy ending
tragedy	a drama in which the protagonist undergoes a series of misfortunes until he or she finally falls; the hero(ine) has to experience a reversal of fortune, i. e. from happiness to misery
one-act play	a short drama consisting of only one act
short play	a short drama which takes about 30 minutes to perform
comic relief	a comic episode in a serious drama which aims at relieving tension by amus- ing the audience
dialogue	two or more people speaking to each other in a text
monologue	an extended speech by one character in a text; it might address other charac- ters or the audience
soliloquy [sa'lrlakwi]	a speech delivered by a character alone on stage (used to reveal the charac- ter's thoughts, feelings or motives to the audience)
stage directions	a playwright's notes about how the drama is to be performed

characters	
protagonist (= main character)	the main character in a dramalplay
hero (ine)	the principal male or female character in a drama; he/she is usually in conflict with another character, fate and/or society
antagonist	the opponent of the protagonist
anti-hero (ine)	a protagonist who does not have the qualities of a typical hero, and is either more like
	an ordinary person or is morally bad and does not fit into society
flat character	a minor character who does not develop in the course of the action
minor character	a character of less importance for the course of the action
round character	a character who develops in the course ofaction and therefore has the ability
	to change
characterization	the way of presenting a character in a text
 direct characterization 	- the narrator or another character describes the character; alternatively, the
	character may describe him- or herself
- indirect characterization	- the reader/audience learns about the character through action and dialogue



Fachschaft Englisch Manual 8

MEDIATION

1. WHAT IS THE DIFFERENCE BETWEEN "MEDIATION" AND "TRANSLATION"?

Mediation is normally used as the umbrella term for any task that has to do with the transfer of information between two languages. In some cases it specifically describes the method of summing something up in a different language.

Translation, on the other hand, describes the process of transferring ideas and text literally, i.e. word for word, between two languages.

You have met both concepts throughout your English course at school as well as when speaking or writing English in everyday situations; you might also encounter them in exams. In an exam you have to understand, evaluate and render at least one complex text or a complicated situation into a different language. This will either take the form of a (literal) translation or summed-up version of the original text.

Make sure you know what you are expected to do: Are you supposed to mediate or translate?

If you are given the choice between a mediation and a translation task, read both alternatives thoroughly before you decide which to do.

Do not start straightaway but apply the special skills and methods you have practised and used before, e.g. highlighting complicated words or constructions, annotating the text(s), making notes.

<u>For mediation</u>: Find out about the **addressee** of your mediation and adapt your **style** and **register** to them. The accompanying setting or situation gives you an idea of who you are mediating for. Try to evaluate the communicative situation by looking for hints in the task line or introduction.

Mediation focusses on important information only, but don't forget to mention the sources.

For translation: Have you included the headline, every sub clause and all the "little" words in your translation?

Take time to check your answer again, if possible after a break. If you are in a conversation situation, ask your addressee If you should provide any further information.

2. GUIDELINE FOR A GOOD MEDIATION

Mediating is a technique used to make communication possible between persons who do not share a common language. More specifically, it means summarising (either orally or in writing) a spoken or written text in another language.

- Make sure you know what information your addressee (= the person you are mediating for) needs.
- Get the gist of what somebody is saying or has written and pass it on without giving your personal opinion.

You will often have to deal with quite big chunks of text, sometimes even full newspaper articles. Your aim should be to summarise but don't forget to give the original source in a written mediation. Leave out any information that is not relevant to the addressee and rearrange the structure of the given text if necessary. You may find it helpful to write the most important points of the text on index cards. You can then arrange and rearrange the order of these cards. As you are doing so, you might find some cards which would make good key points in the summary or some that are not relevant which you can remove.

• Adapt your language, style and register to your addressee. You may, for example, be asked to write a (relatively formal) report on a specific topic for your school magazine or to tell a friend (informally) what a text is about.



STÄDTISCHES GYMNASIUM LAURENTIANUM Fachschaft Englisch Manual 8



- If you are mediating from German for an English-speaking person, paraphrase words or phrases if you don't know the English equivalents. With a written text, you should look up any unknown keywords (often of a technical nature) in a dictionary.
- Sometimes it may be necessary to provide additional information to clarify certain points. You may also have to describe a concept typically found in one language/culture but not in the other, e.g. '*Patientenverfügung*' (= a written and legally binding document in which an adult defines the medical treatment they would be willing to accept in emergency situations).

3. TEN TIPS TO HELP YOU MEDIATE A WRITTEN OR ORAL TEXT

- 1. Don't translate the text word by word.
- 2. Listen/watch out for keywords and the most relevant/most useful information.
- 3. Leave out minor details and irrelevant information (\rightarrow summarising).
- 4. Try to understand the gist of the text and put it into your own words (but don't change the facts).
- 5. Sometimes, there are words that can't be translated into German/English because they also imply cultural differences (e. g. Homecoming, Gap Year, cheerleading or *Schützenfest, Abi-Sturm*, etc.). In such cases, give examples to illustrate the situation, or add information on the cultural background if necessary.
- 6. Don't interpret or evaluate the text, just mediate it.
- 7. Express difficult passages more simply; technical terms should be replaced by everyday language.
- 8. Make use of paraphrases (e.g. a cheerleader is a girl who ...).
- 9. If you don't know a word, use a synonym (= a word or expression that has the same or nearly the same meaning as another in the same language).
- 10. If the right word doesn't come to mind, try simply using the opposite.
- > Be careful with the word order; German and English word order may differ greatly.
- ➢ Proverbs often reveal a great deal of cultural background. Try to find the equivalent proverb rather than trying to translate literally (e.g. *vom Regen in die Traufe* → out of the frying pan and into the fire).
- Beware of false friends, i.e. English words that sound like German ones but differ in meaning (e.g. become, actual, sensible, etc.).



Fachschaft Englisch Manual 9

ANALYSING - DEALING WITH SHORT STORIES

• • • • • •	
introduction	The short story/extract from the novel "", written by [author's
text	name] and published in [year],
type/title/author/year	 deals with the theme of
of publication	 has a single setting (is set in a certain location at a certain
setting (=place + time	time)
of action)	 describes (a meeting/an event/)
theme	• presents a problem/a conflict between and
	 shows a development/a relationship/a crisis/a critical situa-
	tion or scene
	 focuses on a decisive moment (in the life of the protagonist)
readers	The story is written for people/readers who
readers	The target group of the story are
	The readers may identify with a character
setting	The setting
setting	 creates a certain atmosphere (e.g. calm, romantic – tense,
	gloomy)
what at must was	 may have a symbolic meaning The plot of a story is a brief summary of what happens and why.
plot structure	
	The story
	• is divided into parts/consists mainly of dialogue
	 begins slowly with an introduction (of the main characters,
	the theme and the setting)
	 starts off immediately with the action in the first sentence
	 reaches its turning-point or climax near or at the end
	 finishes with a surprise/(un)happy/open ending
	• emphasizes the fast-moving/suspenseful action or the devel-
	opment of a character
	 focuses on one scene only
	 is told chronologically/includes a flashback
characters	fictional characters (not part of real life; invented)
	protagonist = main character; minor characters
	characterization (direct/indirect)
	The reader learns about the physical appearance, personality, behav-
	ior, attitudes, social background, mood etc. of a character through
	 direct characterization: i.e. by what he/she, other characters
	or the narrator say about him/her directly in the text
	 indirect characterization: i.e. by drawing conclusions from
	what he/she says or does in the story (communica-
	tion/behavior)
	A "flat" character
	can be described in one sentence
	 does not change/learn/develop in the story A "round" character
L	 has a more complex personality



STÄDTISCHES GYMNASIUM LAURENTIANUM

Fachschaft Englisch

ANALYSING - DEALING WITH SHORT STORIES

Manual 9

	learns something/develops in the story and may surprise the reader
point of view narra- tor	1. The story is told by the narrator , who is usually not identical with the author.
	 The first-person narrator speaks as "I" and is a character in the story. This point of view is limited and the information may not be reliable. The third-person narrator stands outside the story. He/she may describe the thoughts and feelings of all characters (om- niscient narrator – unlimited perspective/information) or only one character (selective narrator – limited perspec- tive/information).
symbols	A place or object becomes a symbol if it stands for something else. A rose may symbolize love, a wall may represent separation.



Fachschaft Englisch Manual 10

ANALYSING – CHARACTERISATIONS

Some general information about characters in fictional texts:

A character is any person in a fictional text/story. A **major character** is somebody without whom the story could not be told. A **minor character** is somebody who may have quite a lot to say, but is in fact only there to make what is happening to the major character(s) possible or believable. An **extra** is somebody who is only present for the sake of realism. A **principal character** is a major character and **subordinate character** a minor one. A **protagonist** is the most important single character in a story. A protagonist is also sometimes called a **hero** (male) or **heroine** (female).

You can usually distinguish between round and flat characters:

Round characters are those that are very detailed. They are so detailed that they seem as if they were real. (Usually the protagonists and often antagonists are round characters.). A round character in a work of fiction often encounters conflict and is changed by it. Round characters tend to be more fully developed and described than flat characters.

A **flat character** is distinguished by its lack of detail. Though the description of a flat character may be detailed, the character itself barely has detail and usually just follows one characteristic. Flat characters are minor characters in a work of fiction that do not tend to undergo substantial emotional change or growth.

Characterisation comprises any technique used by an author to present, describe and analyse a person. Characterisation does not only deal with character or personality, but also with everything that has to do with a person, such as outer appearance, attitudes, virtues, state of mind, mood and lifestyle.

Characters in fictional texts can be presented in two different ways:

direct / explicit characterization

the narrator or a character tells the reader directly what sort of a person a character is

indirect / implicit characterization

the reader has to draw conclusions about what a character is like by a character's appearance or by what the character says or does

Preparation

Step 1: Mark all relevant passages and make notes on what the narrator or other characters say about the character you are dealing with what the character says about himself or herself the character's appearance (what he or she looks like) how the character acts the character's relationship to others

Step 2: From your notes draw conclusions about the character. Collect your ideas in a network or chart. Always note down examples from the text!



STÄDTISCHES GYMNASIUM LAURENTIANUM

Fachschaft Englisch

ANALYSING – CHARACTERISATIONS

Manual 10

Writing a characterization

Introduction:

Your introduction should include:

- the character's name
- how he or she is related to other characters in the story
- the role he or she plays in the story
- a general statement about the character

Main part:

In the main part you should:

- give details about the character (major and minor characterics)
- say what the character's actions reveal about him or her
- give examples from the text (quotations)
- use as many adjectives as possible to describe what the character is like

Conclusion:

In your conclusion you should:

• summarize what the reader learns about the character and if the character has developed or stayed the same during the story.

Words and phrases to use

He/she seems/appears to be	From this you could conclude that
He/she is described as	Her behaviour suggests/shows that
One can assume that	From what he/she says it can be assumed that
It would appear that	

Word bank

absent-minded, active, affectionate, ambitious, arrogant, assertive, boastful, brave, cautious, cheeky, cheerful, compassionate, confident, conscientious, considerate, cowardly, cunning, generous, hard-working, haughty, humble, impolite, impulsive, indifferent, irresponsible, jealous, just, likeable, mate-rialistic, mean, modest, naïve, obedient, obstinate, optimistic, patient, pessimistic, possessive, pretentious, proud, reserved, rude, ruthless, self-centered, self-confident, self-conscious, selfish, sensitive, shallow, shy, sociable, superficial, tactless, talkative, tolerant, vain, witty.

AN AGGRESSIVE

ANIMAL



Fachschaft Englisch

nglisch Manual 11

ANALYSING SONGS AND POETRY

Poetry (from the Greek "polesis" = making, creating) is a type of literature in which ideas, experiences and feelings are expressed in compact, imaginative, and often musical language. Poets arrange words in ways designed to touch readers' senses, emotions and minds. Lyrics are a set of words that accompany music, either by speaking or singing.

The word lyric de- rives from the Greek word "lyrikos" (= a song sung by the lyre). Most poems and lyrics are written in lines that may contain patterns of rhyme and rhythm to help convey their meaning. They often use figures of speech and imagery to appeal to the readers' and listeners' emotions and imagination. The poet or songwriter usually invents a speaker from whose point of view the feelings, ideas, experiences, etc. are expressed. Poems and songs may be divided into stanzas (groups of lines) or sections and can greatly vary in structure, theme and atmosphere.

GUIDELINE ON ANALYSING A SONG OR A POEM

-	
COMPREHENSION	<u>4</u>
General	What situation/topic is presented?
meaning /	 What is the theme; are there any (striking) leitmotifs?
Content	• What is the author's/singer's Intention; what is the message of the poem/song?
	• What kind of register of English has been chosen (poetic, colloquial, archaic, slang,
	etc.)?
	• What is the melody like (harmonious, rhythmical, tuneful, staccato, etc.)?
FORMAL ANALYS	<u>//S</u>
a) structural	• Examine
devices	- the structure of the poem/song (stanzas, lines, (lack of) punctuation, re-
	frain(s), break(s), enjambements, chorus, etc.)
	- the use of repetitions and/or enumerations/parallelisms
	- the use of contrast(s)/antithesis
	- the use of an illustration (= an example to make an idea clear)
	- the rhyme scheme (e.g. pair rhyme aa bb cc; cross rhyme abab; enclosed
	rhyme abba)
	- the use of free verse
b) sense de-	
vices	- (How) are objects and ideas/thoughts brought together?
1000	- What type(s) of sentence(s) is/are used (hypotactical/paratactical sentences,
	questions, commands, etc.)?
	- Are there allusions/references to a certain topic (e.g. nature, city, love, etc.)?
	- Check on the use of simile (a direct comparison: "like, as'), metaphor (an im-
	plied comparison without a connective word: "an ocean of tears"), personifica-
	tions (something non- human is given human characteristics: "the frosty cliffs
	looked cold"), or symbols (an object that also stands for some abstract idea: a
	red rose- symbol of love, beauty).
	- the use of grammatical tenses the speaker's point of view
	 the employment of hyperbole/exaggeration



STÄDTISCHES GYMNASIUM LAURENTIANUM

Fachschaft Englisch

ANALYSING SONGS AND POETRY

Manual 11

c) sound de-	• Examine
vices	 the use of alliteration/anaphora
	 the use of rhymes and/or assonances (= imperfect rhymes)
	 the use of a particular rhythm, beat
	 the use of onomatopoeia (= words that imitate a sound: buzz, cuckoo, etc.)
	 the instrumentation, beat, vocal/instrumental type of music, vocals, etc.
	- Show how these devices support, stress/emphasize the meaning/content of
	the poem/song (- function/effect).
	 Show how style and content are connected.
	 Show how sound and lyrics match and support each other.
FINAL COMMENT	AND EVALUATION
Message of	• Try to classify the given poem/song (refer to other poems/songs by the same au-
the song and	thor or authors of the same background).
personal as-	• Evaluate the poem/song (is the poem/song convincing? Has the author/singer
sessment	succeeded in conveying his/her message? etc.).
	 What do you consider to be the final message of the poem/song?
	• What do you consider to be the effect on the reader/listener?

GLOSSARY OF LITERARY TERMS FOR POETRY

Note: Stylistic devices that occur in fictional and non-fictional texts can occur in poetry as well, of course. However, there are some devices that are especially (or only) found in poems or songs. For songs/lyrics, there are some additional devices relating to musical aspects. Here is a list. Common devices of poetry also used in songs are marked by a *.

	Poetry
Literary term	Explanation
poem	a composition which contains a structured line sequence and a special
	arrangement of words/ a special rhythm/the use of imagery
concrete poem	a type of poem in which the words form a shape or picture
connotation *	additional meaning of a word beyond its dictionary definition, for example, due to the associations that are formed through personal experience
denotation *	the actual definition of a word
stanza	a major division in a poem consisting of several lines
line	a structural unit in a poem; it is usually classified by a certain number of
	feet
enjambement (= run-	a sentence which runs from one line to another without a pause/break
on line) *	
verse *	a stanza in a poem or song; poetry written in metre
free verse	a poem written without a particular rhyme scheme or regular metre
speaker / singer	the fictional Person who is imagined as saying the text of a poem (not identical with the poet!)
rhythm	the arrangement of stressed or unstressed syllables in writing
metre	the regular rhythmic patterns of a poem/the arrangement of words ac-
	cording to stressed and unstressed syllables
foot	a group of stressed and unstressed syllables within a line of poetry which forms a metrical unit



Fachschaft Englisch Manual 11

ANALYSING SONGS AND POETRY

iamb	metrical foot of two syllables (unstressed - stressed) e.g. become -'-
trochee	metrical foot of two syllables (stressed - unstressed) e.g. happen '
dactyl	metrical foot of three syllables (stressed - unstressed - unstressed): e.g. merrily '
anapaest	metrical foot of three syllables (unstressed - unstressed - stressed): e. g. underneath'-
rhyme	using words that repeat syllable sounds
end rhyme	a rhyme at the end of two lines
rhyme scheme	the arrangement of rhymes in a poem
 rhyming couplets 	 two consecutive lines with the same rhyme: aa bb
 alternate rhyme 	 lines with the rhyme scheme ab ab
 embracing rhyme 	 lines with the rhyme scheme abba
sonnet poem	poem consisting of 14 lines, usually written in iambic pentameter; e. g. the Shakespearean sonnet consists of three quatrains and a couplet with the rhyme scheme abab cdcd dede gg
 quatrain sonnet 	• a stanza of four lines (e.g. in a sonnet)
 quatrant sonnet couplet	 two successive rhyming lines (e.g. at the end of a sonnet)
imagery term *	term for the use of images created by words and that are used to appeal to the reader's imagination, often metaphors and/or similes
	Lyrics / songs
Literary term	Explanation
rhythm, beat	the regular pattern of long and short notes in music
onomatopoeia	words that imitate a sound associated with the thing being named, e. g. buzz, cuckoo, hum, etc.
instrumentation	selection and combination of the musical instruments that are used in a song, e.g. electronic instruments, percussion, violin, etc.
vocals	the part of a piece of music that is sung, for example, by a lead singer; a choir, etc.
genre of music	a particular type or style of music, e.g. jazz, Rap, Funk, Heavy Metal, Pro- test Song, etc.
registers of English	the words, style and grammar used, e.g. poetic, formal, slang, non- standard, in order to express a certain message or Set of values

Other stylistic devices (revision)

literary term	explanation	example
alliteration	recurrence of initial sound	The fair b reeze b lew,
		the white foam flew.
allusion	a reference to an event, literary work or	I can't do that because I am not
	person	Superman.
amplification	repeats a word or expression for emphasis	Love, real love, takes time.
analogy	compares two different things that have	He is flaky as a snowstorm.
	some similar characteristics.	
anaphora	repeats a word or phrase in successive	In every town, in every house in
	phrases	every man, in every woman and
		in every child
enumeration	makes a point with details	renovation included a spa, tennis
		court, pool and lounge.
euphemism	figure of speech intended to hide the real	"the underprivileged" for "the

STÄDTISCHES GYMNASIUM LAURENTIANUM

Fachschaft Englisch Manual 11

ANALYSING SONGS AND POETRY

	nature of s.th. unpleasant or taboo by using a mild or indirect expression	poor"
hyperbole	an exaggeration	Not even a thousand soldiers could keep me away from her.
metaphor	compares two things by stating one is the other	The eyes are the windows of the soul.
onomatopoeia	words that imitate the sound they describe	plunk, whiz, pop
oxymoron	a two word paradox	near miss, seriously funny
parallelism	uses words or phrases with a similar struc- ture	I went to the store, parked the car and bought a pizza.
personification	figure of speech in which inanimate object, abstract concepts or living things (plants, animals) are referred to as if they were hu- man beings	"The sun stepped out of the clouds and smiled momentarily"
repetition	A word or a phrase gets repeated numerous times in a text.	Free at last, free at last, thank God almighty we are free at last
rhetorical ques-	an assertion in the form of a question which	"Who does not love chocolate?"
tion	strongly suggests a particular response	
simile	an explicit comparison (using <i>as</i> or <i>like</i>) be- tween two distinctly different things which have at least one feature in common	like a bull in a china shop



Fachschaft Englisch Manual 12

WRITING -COMMENTS

Strategy box: Writing a comment

In a comment, you usually have to express your personal opinion on a topic or statement

from a text. You can best do this in five steps:

- 1. In the **introduction**, repeat in your own words the topic/statement of the text or the author's opinion.
- 2. In step two, look at the arguments in favour of the statement. ("pros")
- 3. In step three, look at the **arguments against** the statement. ("cons")
- 4. In step four, weigh the arguments and give **your own opinion**.
- 5. In the **conclusion**, sum up your opinion.

"Do you agree with the author's opinion that a stay in Britain is the ideal way to learn English? Why, why not?"

The five steps of the line of argument	5-sentence mini-comment
1. Repeating the author's statement	>>> In the text, the author argues that it is worth
	going to Britain to study English.
2. Argument in favour of the statement	>>> Undoubtedly , some students learn a lot
	about language and culture when studying in
	Britain.
3. Argument against the statement	🔈 There are students, however , who develop
	their command of English to a high level with-
	out ever visiting an English-speaking country.
4. Your own opinion	>> To sum up, the success of a stay abroad de-
	pends very much on the individual student.
5. Summary/conclusion	>> To my mind , progress in a foreign language
	is strongly influenced by talent, interest and
	learning opportunities outside school.

"According to the statistics, books are still very important in modern society. In your opinion, what could be the reasons for this?"

Solution in the second second

- 1. The results of the opinion poll are clear: Most people believe that there are many reasons why books will always be an important part of modern society, and 60 per cent even expect that books will never really be replaced by other media.
- 2. The first reason for this strong support for books is that this medium
- 3. Secondly, people _
- 4. Thirdly, and most importantly, books _____
- 5. In conclusion, books will _____



STÄDTISCHES GYMNASIUM LAURENTIANUM

Fachschaft Englisch

WRITING -COMMENTS

A mini-comment expresses and summarizes the whole line of argument in **five sentences**. A longer comment uses these five sentences as **topic sentences** to begin **five paragraphs** which develop these ideas in more detail with supporting ideas and/or examples.

Manual 12

Language box: Writing a comment

5 5 5		
Repeating someone's opinion (in a text)		
The author/s	peaker/	
 believes/claims that 		
 holds the view/is o 	f the opinion that	
• argues/sug	gests that	
•		
According to the text , it is a	serious problem that	
Expressing your criticism	Expressing your support	
Although the author gives some strong arguments for I feel very different about	The author is right in saying that	
Unlike the speaker, I find it hard to believe	The speaker has my full support when he points out that	
that		
To be quite honest, In fact.		
• I do not think that	 I believe it is right to say that 	
• I cannot (fully) agree with	 I fully agree when the speaker says that 	
• I am not convinced by		
5	• I am of the same opinion as	
In my opinion/view		
 this argument is wrong / weak / 	To my mind,	
not convincing	• this argument is very strong / powerful	
• the author ignores a fact / forgets to say sth.	/ convincing	
/ concentrates too much on sth. / does not	 the author presents a convincing argu- 	
realize that mentation / discusses the topic in deta		
Making concessions Giving arguments/reasons		
Basically, I can accept However, we shouldn't forget that	One reason for my criticism is that Another/A second/ A further argument I	
I agree in principle, but	would like to present is that	
Personally, I would not say that I would also argue that		
Although, we must admit that	Another point I would like to make is that	
In spite of all this,	The main reason, however, is that	
	The most convincing argument is that	
Your conclusion		
To sum up, In short,		
I would conclude that I have o		

I would support the view that ... My suggestion is that ...



Fachschaft Englisch

Manual 12

WRITING -COMMENTS

. . . .

SOURCE: http://www.ego4u.de/de/cram-up/writing/comments

Meinung äußern (allgemein)

It seems to me that	Mir scheint, dass
In my opinion,	Meiner Meinung nach
I am of the opinion that/ I take the view that	Ich bin der Meinung, das
My personal view is that	Meine Meinung dazu ist,
In my experience	Meiner Erfahrung nach
As far as I understand / can see,	Soweit ich das beurteilen
As I see it, / From my point of view	So wie ich das sehe,
As far as I know / From what I know	Soviel ich weiß,
I might be wrong but	Vielleicht liege ich falsch
If I am not mistaken	Wenn ich mich nicht täus
I believe one can (safely) say	Ich glaube, man kann (m
It is claimed that	Wie behauptet wird,
I must admit that	Ich muss zugeben, dass
I cannot deny that	Ich kann nicht leugnen, d
I can imagine that	Ich kann mir vorstellen, o
I think/believe/suppose	Ich denke/glaube/nehme
Personally, I think	Ich persönlich denke
That is why I think	Deshalb denke ich
I am sure/certain/convinced that	Ich bin mir sicher, dass
I am not sure/certain, but	Ich bin mir nicht sicher a
I am not sure, because I don't know the situation exactly.	Ich bin mir nicht ganz sic

I am not convinced that ... I have read that ... I am of mixed opinions (about / on) ... I am of mixed opinions about / on this. I have no opinion in this matter.

Tatsachen herausstellen

The fact is that The (main) point is that ... This proves that ... What it comes down to is that ... It is obvious that ... It is certain that ... One can say that ... It is clear that ... There is no doubt that ...

Zustimmen

There are many reasons for ... There is no doubt about it that ... I simply must agree with that. I am of the same opinion. I am of the same opinion as the author. I completely/absolutely agree with the author.

Teilweise zustimmen

It is only partly true that... I can agree with that only with reservations. That seems obvious, but ... That is not necessarily so. It is not as simple as it seems. Under certain circumstances ..

memor memory naen
Ich bin der Meinung, dass
Meine Meinung dazu ist, dass
Meiner Erfahrung nach
Soweit ich das beurteilen kann,
So wie ich das sehe,
Soviel ich weiß,
Vielleicht liege ich falsch aber
Wenn ich mich nicht täusche
Ich glaube, man kann (mit Sicherheit) sagen
Wie behauptet wird,
Ich muss zugeben, dass
Ich kann nicht leugnen, dass
Ich kann mir vorstellen, dass
Ich denke/glaube/nehme an
Ich persönlich denke
Deshalb denke ich
Ich bin mir sicher, dass
Ich bin mir nicht sicher aber
Ich bin mir nicht ganz sicher, weil ich den Sachverhalt
nicht genau kenne.
Ich bin nicht davon überzeugt, dass
Wie ich gelesen habe
Ich bin geteilter Meinung (über)
Ich habe eine geteilte Meinung dazu.
Ich habe dazu keine Meinung.

Fakt 1st, dass
Der Punkt ist, dass
Das beweist, dass
Letztlich läuft es darauf hinaus, dass
Es ist offensichtlich, dass
Es ist sicher, dass
Man kann sagen, dass
Es ist klar, dass
Es gibt keinen Zweifel daran, dass

Es gibt viele Gründe für ... Es gibt keinen Zweifel daran, dass ... Ich stimme dem unbedingt zu. Ich bin derselben Ansicht. Ich bin derselben Meinung wie der Autor. Ich stimme dem Autor absolut zu.

Es stimmt nur bedingt, dass ... Dem kann ich nur unter Vorbehalt zustimmen. Das liegt scheinbar auf der Hand, aber ... Das ist nicht unbedingt der Fall. Es ist nicht so einfach wie es scheint. Unter gewissen Umständen ...

Page 54 of 148



STÄDTISCHES GYMNASIUM LAURENTIANUM

Fachschaft Englisch

WRITING -COMMENTS

Manual 12

Widersprechen

There is more to it than that.	Man muss mehr berücksichtigen als das.
The problem is that	Das Problem ist, dass
I (very much) doubt whether	Ich bezweifle (sehr), dass
This is in complete contradiction to	Das steht völlig im Widerspruch zu
What is even worse,	Was sogar noch schlimmer ist,
I am of a different opinion because	Ich bin anderer Meinung, weil
I cannot share this / that / the view.	Ich kann diese Auffassung nicht teilen.
I cannot agree with this idea.	Ich kann diesem Gedanken nicht zustimmen.
What I object to is	Wo ich widersprechen muss, ist
Unlike the author I think	Im Gegensatz zum Autor denke ich

Zuerst einmal denke ich

Sie sind weder ... noch ...

Einerseits ... Andererseits ...

Im Gegensatz dazu steht ...

Schließlich / Immerhin ...

In dieser Beziehung ...

Der Grund dafür ist, dass ...

Ein weiterer Aspekt ist ...

Das liegt daran, weil ...

Das Ergebnis davon ist, dass...

Erstens

Zweitens ...

Außerdem ...

Schließlich ...

Wegen ...

Deshalb ...

Nicht nur dies, ich denke auch, dass ...

Ein weiterer wichtiger Punkt ist, dass ...

Dafür gibt es verschiedene/mehrere/viele Gründe.

Obwohl ... wahr ist, wäre es falsch zu behaupten ...

Das trifft in gewissen Fällen vielleicht zu, aber ...

Man könnte entgegnen, dass ... aber ...

Sie sind nicht nur ..., sondern auch ...

Argumente verknüpfen

First of all. I think ... Not only that, but I also think that ... Not only are they ..., they are also ... They are not ..., nor are they ... There are various/several/many reasons for this. First, ... / Firstly, ... Second, ... / Secondly, ... Moreover, ... / Furthermore, ... / In addition, ... Another significant point is that ... Finally, ... On the one hand, ... On the other hand, ... In contrast to this is ... Because of ... That is why ... After all. ... The reason is that ... In that respect ... The result of this is that ... Another aspect/point is that ... It is because ... Although it is true that ... it would be wrong to claim that ... That may sometimes be true, but ... One could argue that ..., but ...

Beispiele anführen

Take for example (the case of)	Nehmen wir z.B. (den Fall von)
Look at	Betrachten wir
For instance / For example	Zum Beispiel
Let me give you an example.	Ich möchte hier ein Beispiel anführen.

Ergänzungen und Schluss

En gambangen una bennabe	
Most probably	Aller Wahrscheinlichkeit nach
It appears to be	Es scheint zu sein.
It is important to mention that	Es ist wichtig zu erwähnen, dass
As I already indicated	Wie ich bereits ankündigte,
In other words,	Anders ausgedrückt
I am most concerned about	Am meisten bin ich besorgt um
I should like to repeat once again that	Ich möchte noch einmal wiederholen, dass
I should like to emphasise that	Ich möchte betonen, dass
I would (just) like to add	Ich möchte (nur noch) hinzufügen
So all in all I believe that	Alles in allem glaube ich, dass
(In) summing up it can be said that	Zusammenfassend lässt sich sagen, dass
Weighing the pros and cons, I come to the conclusion that .	Wenn ich das Für und Wider abwäge, komme ich zu dem
	Schluss, dass

ENGLISH DEPARTMENT



Fachschaft Englisch Manual 13

WRITING - LETTERS

There are basically three types of letters: a formal letter, a letter to the editor, and a personal letter. In the following, their characteristics will be explained.

1.1 Formal Letter

This is the type of letter you write to businesses, government offices or companies, or also to the editor of a newspaper to express your opinion about an article. The style is formal, factual and respectful, even if you are complaining about something.

Writing

- In the reference line, clarify the letter's topic.
- If you do not know the name of the person, write:
 - Dear Sir or Madam, and if you do know their name
 - Dear Mr/Ms/Dr Jones,

The first line begins with a capital letter.

- Summarise the most important point at the end.
- Finish a Sir letter with Yours faithfully, and a Dear Ms (Name) letter with Sincerely,/Yours sincerely, (or less formally, Best/Kind regards), then sign it and type your full name.
- If you have enclosed a document, write after your typed name Enclosures/Encl.: with its title or a description.

1.2 Letter to the Editor

For a letter to the editor, in which you state your opinion on a newspaper article, basically the same rules apply as for a usual formal letter. However, there are some exceptions.

• In the reference line, say exactly which article you are referring to (e.g. *Immigration Attitude Turnaround*, 30 November 2013).

- Write Sir or Madam, or simply To the editor (of ...).
- Make the letter short, to the point and polite, even if you are criticising the article.
- Use strategies to make your opinion convincing.
- End the letter with your name and where you live. Do not use Yours faithfully/sincerely.

Useful phrases for formal letters

- Use formal and polite style.
- Introduce your theme and say why you are writing.
- Points and structure should be exact and clear.

• Offer the recipient the Option to contact you at the end of the email.

Starting the letter

I am writing regarding/to ask about/to thank you for...

In lastweek's/In reference to your letter dated...

Middle of the letter

lappreciate/apologise for/would be grateful if...

Please send me/Would you please be so kind as to... Ending the letter

Please feel free to contact me if you have any questions.

Thank you very much in advance for your help/advice.

I am looking forward to meeting/hearing from you soon. For your convenience I have enclosed ... Fachschaft Englisch

STÄDTISCHES GYMNASIUM LAURENTIANUM

ch Manual 13

WRITING - LETTERS

In a letter to the editor

- With reference/I am referring to your article of...
- In his/her article dated/from ..., the author stated that...
- After carefully studying the article, I am sorry to say that/ would like to express doubts about/to add that...
- I definitely support/agree with the author's opinion on...
- I am very glad that this topic has finally been...
- I was hoping for a more impartial treatment of/would appreciate more objectivity when...
- In my experience...
- An option the author did not consider would be to...
- Undoubtedly, it would be more acceptable if...

1.3 Personal Letter or e-mail

The language used in personal letters is your choice. You can use:

short forms: I'm • we're • there's • they didn't

question tags: don't you? • couldn't they?• aren't we? • ok? colloquial terms: Hi ... • No way! • guy• I'm fed up with

Start like this: Dear Ben,• Hi Jenny,

First line: Start with a capital letter!

Finish like this: Best wishes, • All the best,• Best regards, • Love, • See you soon,• Miss you, • Take care, • Hope to see you/hear from you soon, Tim/Lea (first name only).

Check emails with the automatic spell check, or for other mistakes or sentences which can be misunderstood, before you press Send.



Fachschaft Englisch Manual 14

WRITING - SPEECH SCRIPT

One option at task 3.2 in an exam is to prepare a speech script, but this can also occur as a task in class. This is how you can do it.

Three elements are often mixed in a speech, but depending on the purpose, one of them is dominant:

informative: telling people what you know about a topic

explanatory: showing people how something works or why it is effective

persuasive: trying to win people over and persuade them to take action

1. PREPARATION

- Check your purpose. Is your main Intention to inform, explain or persuade? Should the speech be entertaining or serious or both?
- Think about your audience. Does the topic interest or affect them? What do they know about it already?
- Organise points logically using connectives to link the sections.
- To make your speech convincing, find suitable rhetorical devices.

2. INTRODUCTION

- Greet the audience politely. Thank them for the invitation. State your topic and its importance.
- Catch your listeners' attention, for example with:
 - a surprising fact or trend
 - a new discovery
 - an eye-opening experience
- State your aim and outline your speech structure.
- Hold your listeners' attention. Develop your ideas step by step, e.g.:
 - in chronological order
 - from the least to the most important idea
 - alternating pros and cons
- Clearly link the sections of your speech.

4. CONCLUSION

Round off your speech with one of the following:

- a short summary
- a rhetorical question
- a quotation
- a promise

- a provocative statement or auestion
- an anecdote/joke/quotation.

3. BODY

- - all arguments against and then for your
 - idea
 - connecting problems with solutions.
- Support your statements with facts, statistics or examples of personal experience.
- Repeat and emphasise important ideas.

ENGLISH DEPARTMENT

Fachschaft Englisch Manual 14

STÄDTISCHES GYMNASIUM LAURENTIANUM

WRITING - SPEECH SCRIPT

TIPS FOR PUBLIC SPEAKING

- Introduce yourself.
- Announce what you're going to talk about. Then say lt. Then sum up what you have said.
- Speak in a slow, clear, natural way, using cue cards.
- Stress important words to emphasise key points.
- Pause at the end of each sentence.
- Make sure you don't talk for too long. Most people start to lose concentration after ten minutes.
- Rehearse your speech. Ask someone to listen and give you feedback.
- Do you need to allow time for questions? Have you prepared more information for your answers?

USEFUL PHRASES

Dealing with Problems

- ... is a serious/pressing/urgent problem.
- We can overcome this difficulty/ settle the conflict/ make a compromise/negotiate an agreement/ promote reconciliation by...

Looking into the future

- In the near future/short term/long term/ long nun....
- A short/long term solution would be to...
- I am hopeful/confident that...
- We should work towards...

Taking action

- We have to ensure/see to it that...
- We should take care not to...
- I am prepared/determined to...
- We should adopt a resolution to...

Special rhetorical devices for speeches

- direct address
- enumeration
- anaphora
- imagery

- repetition
 - appeal to the audi-

- - an appeal / a call for action
 - a vision of this topic in the future
 - ٠
 - ask whether anyone has any questions.

- - rhetorical questions
 - hyperbole
 - alliteration •

contrast

- - ence



Fachschaft Englisch Manual 15

WRITING DIALOGUES/INTERVIEWS

A. DIALOGUE

Writing a dialogue between two characters is a task that requires taking their position and including background information you already know about them.

1. How to start

Dialogue is when you let the reader listen in on a conversation between your characters. Just as every stranger you stop on a street corner will answer your question in a different way, every character involved in a dialogue will have a slightly different speaking style.

This may seem like a lot to manage as an author, but it's simple to learn.

- 1. Get in the habit of really listening to how people talk (not only what they say). Take every opportunity to eavesdrop, on the bus, on elevators, in line at the bank...
- 2. Get to know your characters deeply or at least as good as it is possible at your stage of reading.
- 3. Once you have a clear vision of your characters, you can play out their conversations in your head. Put the characters in an imaginary situation, and listen to what they would say. Try saying their lines out loud. And then write down what you hear.
- 4. Clean it up afterwards. Effective dialogue is not the same as the way people really speak. Repeat that three times. Then keep reading below for details.

2. WHAT TO KEEP IN MIND ABOUT YOUR CHARACTERS

How does each of your characters talk? The answer will depend on:

- Geographic background (a Texan doesn't speak the same as a Bostonian)
- Educational level
- Age (Like, is your character, like, a total teenager?)
- Personality (Is your character nervous, impulsive, aggressive, flirtatious, shy?)
- Your character's relationship with the person she's speaking with. She wouldn't talk to her boss the same way she speaks to a friend or to her five-year-old son.
- Your character's attitude to the conversation topic. Does it make him nervous, proud, defensive? Would he rather avoid the subject all together?

All this will affect his speaking style.

3. BASIC DOS AND DON'TS

DOs 🕲

- Pay attention to each character's different speaking style.
- Edit dialogue to trim off most of the fat. A lot of what people say is just blah-blah, but you don't want to bore your reader.
- Show how the character speaks instead of telling it. If the character speaks angrily, you can make this come through in her words -- it's therefore often not necessary to add an expressive dialogue tag such as, "she said angrily." The same if a character is shouting or crying, etc. Keep the reader's attention on your character's speech, not your explanation of it.



STÄDTISCHES GYMNASIUM LAURENTIANUM

Fachschaft Englisch

WRITING DIALOGUES/INTERVIEWS

Manual 15

DON'Ts 🛞

- Don't get too colourful with the dialogue tags. "Hello," she shouted; "Hi there," he cried; "How are you?" she queried," "Fine thanks," he shrilled"... too much of this stuff gets distracting fast. Put your thesaurus away. The basic dialogue verbs "say," "tell," and "ask," have the advantage of fading in the background, letting the reader focus on what your character is saying.
- Don't feel obligated to add a tag to every bit of dialogue. If it's clear who's saying what without them, then you can leave them off.

Don't let your reader get disoriented. Use dialogue tags when they're needed to prevent confusion. There's nothing worse than stopping in the middle of an exciting scene to retrace the dialogue and try to figure out who's saying what ("Okay, it's the killer speaking here, so this must be the detective who's answering him, not his sister...")

4. SOME DIALOGUE NO-NOS

- Information stuffing: "Hey, is that your sister Kate, who dropped out of college to become a welder, causing your father to have a nervous breakdown?"
- Extended incoherent babbling: "Like, I was, you know. Like. Right. Okay, well. Um. What's that? Right. Anyway."
- Putting YOUR words in their mouths: "My Daddy won't let me play with Stevie's trucks, which makes me cry because I'm only four years old and I'm already the victim of gender stereotypes."
- Make your characters say important points, not needless chit-chat. Take a look at this:

5. SUMMARY

William Noble, a renowned scholar of writing, gives five things he thinks good dialogue should do:

- characterise the speaker;
- establish the setting;
- build conflict;
- foreshadow;
- explain.

Each line you include should have a very clear purpose. But you can't just force dialogue on your characters to meet your own ends as an author-it has to be dialogue that works for your characters and their desires. One of the most useful pieces of advice for writing dialogue comes from Kurt Vonnegut: "Every character should want something, even if it is only a glass of water." When your characters are talking, as a writer you should be very clear on what each character wants, even if they're not openly sharing that with each other.

Whether it's adding to characterization, to plot, or to foreshadowing, every line of dialogue should forward the story. Make it count!



Fachschaft Englisch Manual 15

WRITING DIALOGUES/INTERVIEWS

B. (WRITTEN) INTERVIEW

This is a task that can occur in your final A-Level exams. As a lot of steps are already defined by the task, those steps that are required in an exam situation are marked with a *.

Introduction

An Interview is a direct and simple way of getting personal stories and opinions, expert explanations or other answers to questions on all kinds of topics. Interviews can be read as a text, heard on the radio or viewed on podcasts, TV news or talk shows. For the best results, an interviewer (interviewing sb, conducting the Interview) should prepare questions carefully, and the interviewee (being interviewed, giving the Interview) should be ready and able to reply.

STEP 1 - INITIAL PREPARATION

- Choose a topic. Think what you want to know.
- Create simple, precise and clear questions.*
- Sort them into **categories** in a systematic order.*
- **Choose who** you will Interview. Asking **more than one** person these questions helps to fill knowledge gaps, show reasons for different opinions, compare results or check facts/explanations, e.g. in research for written work.
- Or consider conducting a survey.
- Choose the interview method: Will there be a video or audio recording, or will you take notes?

STEP 2 - BEFORE THE INTERVIEW

- **Contact** the interviewee in advance, so he/she has time to agree and think what to say.
- **Explain** the topic, give example questions. Ask for permission to make a recording/take photos.
- Say **how long** the interview will be to encourage the interviewee to give shorter, simpler answers.
- Write questions and framing phrases on cards. (*not on cards but on a separate sheet of paper)
- Mark cards which are most important and which are ok to leave out if time is running out.

USEFUL PHRASES FOR INTERVIEWERS

Starting the Interview

- Mr/Ms, welcome to this Interview and thank you for coming/agreeing to share your thoughts on
- $\bullet \quad The/Today's \ topic \ is \d \ like \ to \ find$

Statements to introduce aspects

- Many people are saying at the moment/think that..
- We have been talking about/discussing ... in ...
- You might already have heard of ...

out/ask you why

 My name isI'm a reporter from ... May I ask you about your views on/some questions about ...?

(an idea/person)

 You did some research/wrote a report on...



STÄDTISCHES GYMNASIUM LAURENTIANUM

Fachschaft Englisch

WRITING DIALOGUES/INTERVIEWS

Manual 15

Direct, open questions (Avoid yes/no questions!)

- To start with, please tell us how/why/when/what...
- What do you think about/is your opinion on ...?
- How do you feel about that? Do you agree/disagree?
- How important is it for you to ... /How does this influence you?
- What advice would you give to somebody who...
- What would you do/What would

Structuring, connecting questions (Be flexible!)

- You said/have argued that ... Does that mean ...
- We've heard about your experience of ... It would interest me very much to hear/know
- Let's pick up on your last statement. Do/did you...

Responding politely and neutrally (Don't judge!)

- Really? That's interesting/surprising/...But
- That is certainly an unexpected/unusual answer. Are you
- I see/Good point/Thank you for that insight. End-ing the interview

USEFUL PHRASES FOR INTERVIEWEES

Gaining time/asking for help

- That is a very good question. As a matter of fact,
- Let me think ... How shall I put this?
- I expected you to ask that/I'm not sure I
- understood that.

Not answering or changing direction

- This is a topic I'd prefer not to talk about. Actually...
- I'm afraid I don't know enough about ... to be able to ...
- I must admit I'm not an expert

have happened if ...?

- When did you first...
- Some people consider your views as ... How would you respond?/What I'd like to know is why you...
- It may be right that ... but don't you think/wouldn't you agree that ... ?So would you prefer to ... /Why did you...
- Let's move on to/talk now about/... I'd like to know
- I'd also be really interested to hear your views on
- Thank you very much for your time/(being here and) speaking to me/sharing your views on ... with *me/us*.
- I'm sorry to say our time's (nearly) up./We've come to the end of the interview. It's been great talking to you.
- That's quite a difficult question to answer immediately.
- Could you please repeat/rephrase the question?

on...

- That's probably a question an expert should answer.
- I think it's more important to look at...

Fachschaft Englisch



Manual 16

WRITING - SUMMARIES

Writing a good summary demonstrates that you clearly understand a text...and that you can communicate that understanding to your readers. A summary can be tricky to write at first because it's tempting to include too much or too little information. But by following this 8-step method, you will be able to summarize texts quickly and successfully for any class or subject.

- **1. Divide...and conquer**. First off, skim the text you are going to summarise and divide it into sections. Focus on any headings and subheadings. Also look at any bold-faced terms and make sure you understand them before you read.
- **2. Read**. Now that you've prepared, go ahead and read the text. Read straight through. At this point, you don't need to stop to look up anything that gives you trouble—just get a feel for the author's tone, style, and main idea.
- **3. Reread**. Rereading should be *active* reading. Underline topic sentences and key facts. Mark those parts that you want to refer to when you write your summary. Also mark those parts that should be avoided because the details—although they may be interesting—are too specific. Identify areas that you do not understand and try to clarify those points.
- **4. One sentence at a time**. You should now have a good understanding of the text you will be summarising. In steps 1–3, you divided the piece into sections and worked out the author's main ideas and points. Now write down the main idea of each section in one well-developed sentence. Make sure that what you include in your sentences are key points, not minor details.
- **5. Write a thesis statement**. This is the key to any well-written summary. Review the sentences you wrote in step 4. From them, you should be able to create a thesis statement that clearly communicates what the entire text was trying to achieve. If you find that you are not able to do this step, then you should go back and make sure your sentences actually addressed key points.
- **6. Ready to write**. At this point, your first draft is virtually done. You can use the thesis statement as the introductory sentence of your summary, and your other sentences can make up the body. Make sure that they are in order. Add some transition words (then, however, also, moreover) that help with the overall structure and flow of the summary. And once you are actually putting pen to paper (or fingers to keys!), remember these tips:
 - Write in the present tense.
 - Make sure to include the author and title of the work.
 - Be concise: a summary should not be equal in length to the original text.
 - If you must use the words of the author, cite them.
 - Don't put your own opinions, ideas, or interpretations into the summary. The purpose of writing a summary is to accurately represent what the author wanted to say, not to provide a critique.
- **7. Check for accuracy**. Reread your summary and make certain that you have accurately represented the author's ideas and key points. Make sure that you have correctly cited anything directly quoted from the text. Also check to make sure that your text does not contain your own commentary on the piece.
- **8. Revise**. Once you are certain that your summary is accurate, you should (as with any piece of writing) revise it for style, grammar, and punctuation. If you have time, give your summary to someone else to read. This person should be able to understand the main text based on your summary alone. If he or she does not, you may have focused too much on one area of the piece and not enough on the author's main idea.



STÄDTISCHES GYMNASIUM LAURENTIANUM

Fachschaft Englisch

WRITING - NEWSPAPER ARTICLE AND REPORT

Manual 17

There are three basic types of news articles:

- 1. reports (news)
- 2. features (news and background)
- 3. comments or leaders/editorials (including the writers opinion)

News reports inform the public about interesting and important events in an unbiased way. As total objectivity is not possible, they should at least be fair, with all the relevant points and aspects included, even if the writer does not agree with them.

STEP 1: PREPARATION

- Research the topic and make sure you can answer the wh-questions:
 Who? What? When? Where? Why? and sometimes How? and So What?
- Remember the ABC of news writing:
 - Accuracy: Be exact, all the facts have to be correct.
 - Brevity: Keep it short and to the point, but leave out nothing important.
 - Clarity: make sure everyone can understand your text.

STEP 2: WRITING

• Attract the reader's attention with the headline and the lead-in (usually the first sentence or paragraph). This contains the most important or exciting point and makes the reader want to go on reading.



- Make use of topic sentences at the beginning of every paragraph, stating what it will be about.
- The structure of a newspaper article is an inverted pyramid with the most important aspects at the top. More facts and additional details follow, with the least important ones at the end, so readers can stop reading when they feel they have enough information. If the story is written well, however, he/she will read on.

STEP 3: EDITING AND CHECKING

- Make time to read through your draft and check for mistakes. Take a break before, if possible.
- Check for your most frequent mistakes first.
- Concentrate on one aspect, then read again for the next. Read aloud to check the flow of the text. The latter point does not apply in exams as it irritates people...
- Make overly complex sentences simpler or shorter.
- Check for correct content and logical structure. Is an important point missing?
- Check for spelling, grammar, punctuation mistakes and variety of words and sentences.
- In an exam, write a neat and tidy final version. Note: as time is often short in exams, focus on you most common mistakes.



Fachschaft Englisch

ANALYSIS OF NON-FICTIONAL TEXTS

WHAT ARE NON-FICTION TEXTS?

Non-fiction is a type or genre of writing based on facts and real life rather than a made-up or fictional story. Non-fiction includes any kind of text designed to give information. There are a range of **forms** for non-fiction including:

Manual 18

- Information leaflets
- Newspaper or magazine articles (reports (factual) and comments (argumentative)) •
- Travel writing .
- Biographies .
- Company websites
- Advertisements and advertorials
- Film and book reviews

Mostly, you will have to deal with newspaper, magazine or online articles. Thus, we are focusing on these in the following. There are basically two types: factual texts and argumentative texts.

1. HOW TO ANALYSE A NON-FICTION TEXT

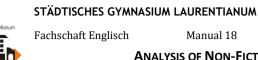
Most texts you encounter are **argumentative texts** which have the purpose to **convince or persuade** the reader of the author's point of view. Therefore, the first step is to identify the author's audience and the purpose of the text. Once you know what kind of text you are looking at, you need to know two more key details:

- Audience who is the text aimed at (e.g. men or women, adult or youth)?
- **Purpose** what is the text trying to do (e.g. inform, persuade/convince, argue or advise)?

After that, you will have to summarise the main idea of the text, i.e. precisely identify the author's intention and his point of view. The next step is to look at the task you are expected to do: what exactly should you take a look at? The following table will help you to tackle this. The fourth column refers to the model exam in your readers (p. 16-23).

Step	Goal	What to do / general remarks /	Example from model exam
		points of interest	
1. Identify the audi- ence and the pur- pose of the text	 to find out who the author aims at to find out what type of text we deal with 	 The audience can be deducted by the topic and the means of direct addressing: who is most likely to feel addressed by what the text conveys? The purpose of a text can be determined by the use of lan- guage and the forms of ad- dressing the reader. Informa- tive texts usually do not include figurative and vivid language and do not address the reader directly. They also do not in- clude personal opinions. On the 	 Audience: Readers of the <i>Huff-ington Post</i>, the American public in general and especially those entitled to vote Purpose: Argumentative text and persuading her readers of her point of view that





Manual 18

ANALYSIS OF NON-FICTIONAL TEXTS

2.	Now take a c Analyse the v	lose look at the vay Melissa Schv	contrary, persuasive or argu- mentative texts try to make a point and convince the reader. However, these texts are often very one-sided and lack impar- tiality: counter-arguments are often left out entirely or only used if they can be refuted di- rectly by an even stronger pro- argument. do with certain aspects of analysis points of interest. Example from your rea <i>vartz tries to convince the reader of her v</i> <i>rds (5) and stylistic devices (6).</i>	
3.	her view	 to precisely point out the au- thor's point of view to say how she tries to convince the reader 	 This is basically the essence of the text: what is the author's core intention? Here you can copy what you are about to analyse in detail. 	 voting Donald Trump in the 2016 Presidential Elections is wrong and will have serious nega- tive effects on America's future. She supports her view using a clear line of ar- gument, a supportive choice of words as well as a number of stylistic devices to make her ar- ticle more readable and vivid.
4.	line of ar- gument	 to examine the struc- ture of a text to transfer the content onto an abstract level 	 Identify which paragraphs go together thematically. You have to characterise the paragraphs and what she writes about in a general sense, not focusing on details. The basic question is: What does the author do in the paragraph(s)? Possible categories are: presenting facts or figures sharing personal experience presenting expert opinions describing outside points of view 	 Lines 23-39 consist of several paragraphs in which the author as- sesses a possible Trump presidency Schwartz presents the reader with the conse- quences of Trump being President and provides an all in all negative out- look.



Fachschaft Englisch

Manual 18

ANALYSIS OF NON-FICTIONAL TEXTS

		 performing an assessment appeal to the reader making predictions giving arguments or counter- arguments 	
5. choice of words	• to analyse the effect of the lan- guage used	 There are also certain categories you can group words in: formal language / register (words of Latin origin, loan words from other languages) informal language / register (colloquial expressions, often used to present complicated issues in a more comprehensible way, to exaggerate or to ironise) technical terms (words that can be 	 "debase", l. 6; "mandatory", l. 20; "aggravate", l. 30; "enact", l. 35; "spectacle", l. 2; "buffoon", l. 5 "brag", l. 16
		 allocated to a certain topic or are frequently used when talking about a certain subject) positively connoted words to support a certain point of view negatively connoted words to refute or rebut opposing points of view generally: a judgmental choice of words 	 "unilateral", l. 36 "enough", l. 1;"worse", l. 14; "hatred", l. 28; "ag- gravating", l. 30; "fault", l. 41
6. stylistic devices	• to explain the effect of crea- tively used language	 to make a text more readable and vivid to intensify the effect of the core idea see also Manual 1, Common Stylistic Devices 	 metaphors ("stir hatred", l. 28; medical metaphors "cancer", "symptom", "disease", ll. 30 f.); enumerations and parallelisms (cf. ll. 15-22; l. 23; ll. 35-39; ll. 40-42); repetition ("enough is enough", ll. 1, 26, 52).
7. sentence structure	• to explain the effect of syntax	 Sentence length: Short sentences may be used to build up tension. Longer sentences may be used for explanation. Sentence types: Questions and rhetorical ques- 	• a changeable sentence structure (short sen- tences when she wants to warn the reader of Trump as well as when she di- rectly appeals to the reader, ll. 23-25; ll.



8.

STÄDTISCHES GYMNASIUM LAURENTIANUM

Fachschaft Englisch

Manual 18

ANALYSIS OF NON-FICTIONAL TEXTS

	r		
		 tions might be used. An exclamation such as <i>How amazing!</i> can be used to indicate a strong emotional reaction. Inversion: Where the normal word order is reversed, usually in order to place emphasis on a particular word. Contrast: Individual words or groups of words can be placed side by side – in juxtaposition – to stress the contrast between ideas. Parenthesis: Where extra information is included in the middle of a sentence, contained within dashes, brackets or commas. 	40-43);
persuasive techniques / commu- nicative strategies	• to analyse the ways and means the author attempts to manipulate the reader	 use of contrasts: illustrating differences between two issues, things or circumstances to highlight and support a certain view use of personal experiences and anecdotes use of examples, facts, statistics etc. use of pros and cons (balanced, one-sided, making concessions) direct address of the reader: using inclusive pronouns like "we", "you", "our" appeals / requests (rhetorical) questions (see also sentence structure) reduction of complex issues to short and simple slogans (see also sentence structure) use of stereotypes and gereralisations use of humour, irony or sarcasm, exaggerations / hyperbole 	



Fachschaft Englisch Manual 18

ANALYSIS OF NON-FICTIONAL TEXTS

3. USEFUL PHRASES

Introduction	Einleitung
 The text deals with/is about 	Der Text handelt von
The theme of the text is	Das generelle Thema des Textes ist
 The text is composed of/consists of 	Der Text besteht aus
 Three/two different parts can be distinguished 	Man kann drei/zwei Abschnitte unterscheiden
• The first part runs from line to line	Der erste Teil geht von Zeile bis Zeile
 At the beginning of the text, 	Am Anfang des Textes
The author begins by saying	Der Autor/Die Autorin beginnt damit, dass
 At the end of the text,/Finally,/Lastly, 	Am Ende des Textes/Schließlich/Letztendlich
 The first part forms the introduction 	Der erste Abschnitt bildet die Einleitung.
 The author's main/central/principal idea is 	Die Kernthese des Autors ist
 In the conclusion, the author states that 	In seinem Fazit sagt der Autor, dass
• In the final part, the author concludes that	Im letzten Abschnitt schließt/schlussfolgert der Autor (damit), dass
The Author	Der Autor
• The author thinks/says/believes that	Der Autor denkt/sagt/glaubt, dass
According to the author,/In his/her view,	Laut Autor /Seiner/Ihrer Meinung nach
• The author illustrates his/her point of view with	Der Autor veranschaulicht seine Sichtweise/Ansicht mit
• The author makes a comment on	Der Autor kommentiert / äußert sich dahingehend /bemerkt, dass
• The author is convinced that	Der Autor ist davon überzeugt, dass / ist der Überzeu- gung, dass
• The author's judgements are (un)realistic/(not) objective/unfounded/well-founded	Die Beurteilungen /Das Urteil des Verfassers ist (un)realistisch/(nicht) objektiv/nicht fundiert/sehr fun- diert
• The reader can sympathise with the author's view on	Der Leser kann für die Meinung des Verfassers zu … Ver- ständnis aufbringen.
The author expresses doubts on/questions regard- ing	Der Autor äußert Zweifel an/ Fragen bezüglich
The author makes remarks on	Der Verfasser bemerkt zu / merkt zu… an
The intention/aim/objective of the author is	Ziel / Aussageabsicht des Autors ist
The author portrays believable characters.	Der Autor zeichnet glaubhafte Charaktere.
• The author gives a detailed/vague description of	Der Autor bietet eine genaue/vage Beschreibung von/der/des
Purpose (of texts)	Zweck eines Textes
• The author wants to arouse the reader's interest.	Der Autor möchte das Interesse des Lesers wecken / er- regen
• The text appeals to	Der Text spricht an.
He tries to manipulate	Er versucht, zu beeinflussen / manipulieren.
• He wants the reader to become aware of	Er möchte den Leser auf aufmerksam machen.
• The text addresses young/poor/ people	Der Text richtet sich an junge / arme / … Leute …
• It is the author's objective to create a feeling of	Es ist das Ziel des Autors, ein Gefühl der / des zu er- schaffen.
• The author attempts to influence the reader.	Der Autor versucht, den Leser zu beeinflussen.



STÄDTISCHES GYMNASIUM LAURENTIANUM

Manual 18

ANALYSIS OF NON-FICTIONAL TEXTS

Vocabulary	Wortschatz / Wortwahl / Vokabular
• The vocabulary contains many colloquial expres-	Das Vokabular enthält viele umgangssprachliche Begriffe
sions/technical terms	/ Fachbegriffe
 This word/term expresses fear / 	Dieses Wort /Dieser Ausdruck drückt Angst / aus.
• This word has a negative meaning/negative asso-	Dieses Wort hat eine negative Bedeutung / negative As-
ciations	soziationen/Verbindungen
 These phrases belong to the spoken language. 	Diese Sätze gehören der gesprochenen Sprache an.
 The choice of words gives the text its romantic/ 	Die Wortwahl gibt dem Text seinen romantischen /
technical/ character.	technischen/fachlichen Charakter.
 These expressions are typical of 	Diese Ausdrücke sind typisch für
Criticising the author	Kritische Auseinandersetzung mit dem Autor
• I (dis-)agree with the author on	Ich stimme dem Autor bei (nicht) zu.
• I don't understand why he/she	Ich verstehe nicht, warum er/sie
• I consider it to be wrong/difficult to	Ich erachte es als falsch / schwierig zu
• This/ cannot be taken seriously because	Dies / kann nicht ernst genommen werden, weil
It has to be pointed out that	Man muss herausstellen / hervorheben, dass
This statement contradicts his view of	Diese Aussage widerspricht seiner Ansicht von
There is a contradiction in	Es gibt einen Widerspruch bei…
It is essential that	Es ist essentiell/wesentlich, dass
This raises the question as to why he/she	Dies wirft die Frage auf, warum er/sie
What really matters is	Was wirklich wichtig ist, ist
This problem has nothing to do with	Diese Problem hat nichts mit zu tun.
This is of no importance/significance for	Dies ist für … ohne Belang /Wichtigkeit.
As far as is concerned,	Soweit es betrifft,
From this point of view,	Von diesem Standpunkt aus
Generally speaking,	Im Allgemeinen / Allgemein gesehen
As a matter of fact,	Eigentlich / Tatsächlich / In Wahrheit
• In theory,, but in reality,	Theoretisch, aber tatsächlich
• In theory,, but in reality,	Theoretisen, aber tatsachnen
Further useful expressions	Weitere hilfreiche Formulierungen
 To give an explanation for, he 	Um zu erklären, er
The author pretends to know	Der Autor gibt vor, zu wissen,
• The author describes the characteristics of	Der Autor beschreibt die Eigenschaften /Charakteristika von
• The article is based on	Der Artikel stütz sich auf
The author makes an allusion to	Der Autor spielt auf … an / macht eine Anspielung auf…
This sentence reveals the true character of	Dieser Satz offenbart den wahren Charakter
He/She appeals to emotions rather than	Er/Sie spricht eher Emotionen als an.
He quotes some experts as an example of	Er zitiert einige Experten als Beispiel für
• The article relates/refers to	Der Artikel bezieht sich auf
• The text conveys the impression that	Der Text vermittelt den Eindruck, dass
The writer establishes a relationship between	Der Autor begründet eine Beziehung zwischen
The author's theses are	Die Thesen des Autors sind
He supports his thesis with	Er unterstützt sein These / Kernaussage mit/durch
He takes a positive/negative view of	Er nimmt eine positive / negative Haltung zu ein.
1 / 0	
 He takes a positive/negative view of The author generalizes about This is a great simplification of 	Er nimmt eine positive / negative Haltung zu … ein. Der Autor pauschalisiert / verallgemeinert… Dies ist eine starke Vereinfachung der/des/von…





Manual 19

NOTES ON VOCAB – GENERAL

This is an overview of commonly used words and alternatives as well as basic vocab for the central top-

ics. For more detailed vocabulary, see the Dropbox.

Synonyms for frequently used words

Amazing — incredible, unbelievable, fabulous, wonderful, fantastic, astonishing, , extraordinary **Anger** — enrage, infuriate, arouse, nettle, exasperate, inflame, madden

Angry — mad, furious, enraged, excited, wrathful, indignant, exasperated, aroused, inflamed **Answer** — reply, respond, retort, acknowledge

Ask- — question, seek information from, demand, request, expect, inquire, query, interrogate, examine, Awful — dreadful, terrible, abominable, bad, poor, unpleasant

Bad — evil, immoral, wicked, corrupt, sinful, depraved, rotten, contaminated, spoiled, tainted, harmful, injurious, unfavorable, defective, inferior, imperfect, substandard, faulty, improper, inappropriate, unsuitable, disagreeable, unpleasant, cross, nasty, unfriendly, irascible, horrible, atrocious, outrageous, scandalous, infamous, wrong, noxious, sinister, putrid, snide, deplorable, dismal, gross, heinous, nefarious, base, obnoxious, detestable, despicable, contemptible, foul, rank, ghastly, execrable

Beautiful — pretty, lovely, handsome, attractive, gorgeous, , splendid, magnificent, , fair, , elegant, fine, , pleasing, , stunning, glorious, heavenly, resplendent, radiant, glowing,

Begin — start, open, launch, initiate, commence, inaugurate, originate

Big — enormous, huge, immense, gigantic, vast, large, great, tall, broad, expansive, tremendous

Brave — courageous, fearless, dauntless, daring, heroic, valorous, audacious, bold, valiant

Bright — *hell*: shining, shiny, gleaming, brilliant, sparkling, shimmering, radiant, vivid, colorful, lumi-

nous intelligent: clever, intelligent, knowing, quick-witted, smart, intellectual

 ${\bf Calm-quiet, peaceful, still, tranquil, mild, smooth, , level-headed, unexcited}$

Come — approach, advance, near, arrive, reach

Cool — chilly, cold, frosty, wintry, icy, frigid

Cry — shout, yell, yowl, scream, roar, bellow, weep, wail, sob, bawl

Cut — gash, slash, prick, nick, sever, slice, carve, cleave, slit, chop, crop, lop, reduce

Dangerous — perilous, hazardous, risky, uncertain, unsafe

Dark — shadowy, unlit, murky, gloomy, dim, dusky, shaded, sunless, black, dismal, sad

Decide — determine, settle, choose, resolve

Definite — certain, sure, positive, determined, clear, distinct, obvious

Describe — portray, characterize, picture, narrate, relate, recount, represent, report, record

Destroy — ruin, demolish, raze, waste, kill, slay, end, extinguish

Difference — disagreement, inequity, contrast, dissimilarity, incompatibility

Do — execute, enact, carry out, finish, conclude, effect, accomplish, achieve, attain

End — stop, finish, terminate, conclude, close, halt, cessation, discontinuance

Enjoy — appreciate, delight in, be pleased, indulge in, luxuriate in, bask in, relish, devour, savor, like

Explain — elaborate, clarify, define, interpret, justify, account for

Fair — just, impartial, unbiased, objective, unprejudiced, honest

Fall — drop, descend, plunge, topple, tumble

False — fake, fraudulent, counterfeit, spurious, untrue, unfounded, erroneous, deceptive, groundless, fallacious

Famous — well-known, renowned, celebrated, famed, eminent, illustrious, distinguished, noted, notorious

Fast — quick, rapid, speedy, fleet, hasty, snappy, mercurial, swiftly, rapidly, quickly, snappily, speedily, lickety-split, posthaste, hastily, expeditiously, like a flash

Fat — stout, corpulent, fleshy, beefy, paunchy, plump, full, rotund, tubby, pudgy, chubby, chunky, burly, bulky, elephantine

Fear — fright, dread, terror, alarm, dismay, anxiety, scare, awe, horror, panic, apprehension **Fly** — soar, hover, flit, wing, flee, waft, glide, coast, skim, sail, cruise



Fachschaft Englisch

Manual 19

NOTES ON VOCAB - GENERAL

Funny — humorous, amusing, droll, comic, comical, laughable, silly

Get — acquire, obtain, secure, procure, gain, fetch, find, score, accumulate, win, earn, rep, catch, net, bag, derive, collect, gather, glean, pick up, accept, come by, regain, salvage

Go — recede, depart, fade, disappear, move, travel, proceed

Good — excellent, fine, superior, wonderful, marvelous, qualified, suited, suitable, apt, proper, capable, generous, kindly, friendly, gracious, obliging, pleasant, agreeable, pleasurable, satisfactory, well-

behaved, obedient, honorable, reliable, trustworthy, safe, favorable, profitable, advantageous, righteous, expedient, helpful, valid, genuine, ample, salubrious, estimable, beneficial, splendid, great, noble, worthy, first-rate, top-notch, grand, sterling, superb, respectable, edifying

Great — noteworthy, worthy, distinguished, remarkable, grand, considerable, powerful, much, mighty **Gross** — improper, rude, coarse, indecent, crude, vulgar, outrageous, extreme, grievous, shameful, uncouth, obscene, low

Happy — pleased, contented, satisfied, delighted, elated, joyful, cheerful, ecstatic, jubilant, gay, tickled, gratified, glad, blissful, overjoyed

Hate — despise, loathe, detest, abhor, disfavor, dislike, disapprove, abominate

Have — hold, possess, own, contain, acquire, gain, maintain, believe, bear, beget, occupy, absorb, fill, enjoy

Help — aid, assist, support, encourage, back, wait on, attend, serve, relieve, succor, benefit, befriend, abet

Hide — conceal, cover, mask, cloak, camouflage, screen, shroud, veil

Hurry — rush, run, speed, race, hasten, urge, accelerate, bustle

Hurt — damage, harm, injure, wound, distress, afflict, pain

Idea — thought, concept, conception, notion, understanding, opinion, plan, view, belief

Important — necessary, vital, critical, indispensable, valuable, essential, significant, primary, principal, considerable, famous, distinguished, notable, well-known

Interesting — fascinating, engaging, sharp, keen, bright, intelligent, animated, spirited, attractive, inviting, intriguing, provocative, though-provoking, challenging, inspiring, involving, moving, titillating, tantalizing, exciting, entertaining, piquant, lively, racy, spicy, engrossing, absorbing, consuming, gripping, arresting, enthralling, spellbinding, curious, captivating, enchanting, bewitching, appealing Vacan hold notice witched processing and the spice of the spice

 ${\bf Keep}-{\bf hold}, {\bf retain}, {\bf withhold}, {\bf preserve}, {\bf maintain}, {\bf sustain}, {\bf support}$

Little — tiny, small, diminutive, shrimp, runt, miniature, puny, exiguous, dinky, cramped, limited, itsybitsy, microscopic, slight, petite, minute

Look — gaze, see, glance, watch, survey, study, seek, search for, peek, peep, glimpse, stare, contemplate, examine, gape, ogle, scrutinize, inspect, leer, behold, observe, view, witness, perceive, spy, sight, discover, notice, recognize, peer, eye, gawk, peruse, explore

Love — like, admire, esteem, fancy, care for, cherish, adore, treasure, worship, appreciate, savor **Make** — create, originate, invent, beget, form, construct, design, fabricate, manufacture, produce, build, develop, do, effect, execute, compose, perform, accomplish, earn, gain, obtain, acquire, get

Move — plod, go, creep, crawl, inch, poke, drag, toddle, shuffle, trot, dawdle, walk, traipse, mosey, jog, plug, trudge, slump, lumber, trail, lag, run, sprint, trip, bound, hotfoot, high-tail, streak, stride, tear, breeze, whisk, rush, dash, dart, bolt, fling, scamper, scurry, skedaddle, scoot, scuttle, scramble, race, chase, hasten, hurry, hump, gallop, lope, accelerate, stir, budge, travel, wander, roam, journey, trek, ride, spin, slip, glide, slide, slither, coast, flow, sail, saunter, hobble, amble, stagger, paddle, slouch, prance, straggle, meander, perambulate, waddle, wobble, pace, swagger, promenade, lunge

New — fresh, unique, original, unusual, novel, modern, current, recent

Old — feeble, frail, ancient, weak, aged, used, worn, dilapidated, ragged, faded, broken-down, former, old-fashioned, outmoded, passe, veteran, mature, venerable, primitive, traditional, archaic, conventional, customary, stale, musty, obsolete, extinct

Part — portion, share, piece, allotment, section, fraction, fragment

Place — space, area, spot, plot, region, location, situation, position, residence, dwelling, set, site, station, status, state



Fachschaft Englisch Manual 19

NOTES ON VOCAB - GENERAL

Plan — plot, scheme, design, draw, map, diagram, procedure, arrangement, intention, device, contrivance, method, way, blueprint

Popular — well-liked, approved, accepted, favorite, celebrated, common, current

Put-place, set, attach, establish, assign, keep, save, set aside, effect, achieve, do, build

Quiet — silent, still, soundless, mute, tranquil, peaceful, calm, restful

Right — correct, accurate, factual, true, good, just, honest, upright, lawful, moral, proper, suitable, apt, legal, fair

Run — race, speed, hurry, hasten, sprint, dash, rush, escape, elope, flee

Say/Tell — inform, notify, advise, relate, recount, narrate, explain, reveal, disclose, divulge, declare, command, order, bid, enlighten, instruct, insist, teach, train, direct, issue, remark, converse, speak, affirm, suppose, utter, negate, express, verbalize, voice, articulate, pronounce, deliver, convey, impart, assert, state, allege, mutter, mumble, whisper, sigh, exclaim, yell, sing, yelp, snarl, hiss, grunt, snort, roar, bellow, thunder, boom, scream, shriek, screech, squawk, whine, philosophize, stammer, stutter, lisp, drawl, jabber, protest, announce, swear, vow, content, assure, deny, dispute

Scared — afraid, frightened, alarmed, terrified, panicked, fearful, unnerved, insecure, timid, shy, skittish, jumpy, disquieted, worried, vexed, troubled, disturbed, horrified, terrorized, shocked, petrified, haunted, timorous, shrinking, tremulous, stupefied, paralyzed, stunned, apprehensive

Show — display, exhibit, present, note, point to, indicate, explain, reveal, prove, demonstrate, expose **Slow** — unhurried, gradual, leisurely, late, behind, tedious, slack

Stop — cease, halt, stay, pause, discontinue, conclude, end, finish, quit

Story — tale, myth, legend, fable, yarn, account, narrative, chronicle, epic, sage, anecdote, record, memoir

Strange — odd, peculiar, unusual, unfamiliar, uncommon, queer, weird, outlandish, curious, unique, exclusive, irregular

Take — hold, catch, seize, grasp, win, capture, acquire, pick, choose, select, prefer, remove, steal, lift, rob, engage, bewitch, purchase, buy, retract, recall, assume, occupy, consume

Tell — disclose, reveal, show, expose, uncover, relate, narrate, inform, advise, explain, divulge, declare, command, order, bid, recount, repeat

Think — judge, deem, assume, believe, consider, contemplate, reflect, mediate

Trouble — distress, anguish, anxiety, worry, wretchedness, pain, danger, peril, disaster, grief, misfortune, difficulty, concern, pains, inconvenience, exertion, effort

True — accurate, right, proper, precise, exact, valid, genuine, real, actual, trusty, steady, loyal, dependable, sincere, staunch

Ugly — hideous, frightful, frightening, shocking, horrible, unpleasant, monstrous, terrifying, gross,

grisly, ghastly, horrid, unsightly, plain, homely, evil, repulsive, repugnant, gruesome

Unhappy — miserable, uncomfortable, wretched, heart-broken, unfortunate, poor, downhearted, sorrowful, depressed, dejected, melancholy, glum, gloomy, dismal, discouraged, sad

Use — employ, utilize, exhaust, spend, expend, consume, exercise

Wrong — incorrect, inaccurate, mistaken, erroneous, improper, unsuitable



STÄDTISCHES GYMNASIUM LAURENTIANUM

Manual 20

NOTES ON VOCAB – TRANSITION PHASE

Here is a list of basic terms you should be familiar with.

THE DIGITAL AGE	
to access sth.; (to have) access to sth.	auf etw. zugreifen; Zugriff haben auf
biog; blogger	Blog, Blogger
to broadcast	ausstrahlen, senden
cell phone (AE), mobile phone (BE)	Handy, Mobiltelefon
to communicate with sb.	mit jmd. kommunizieren
to connect; connected (to)	verbinden; verbunden sein mit
cyberbullying	Cybermobbing
to design a website	eine Internetseite erstellen
digital traffic	Datenverkehr; Zahl der Besucher auf einer Seite
to distribute sth via the internet	etw über das Internet verkaufen
podcast	Podcast
to post sth. online	etw im Internet veröffentlichen
on the internet	im Internet
(online) privacy	Privatsphäre (im Internet)
to reply	antworten
to revolutionise sth	etw revolutionieren, umwälzen
search engine	Suchmaschine
search term	Suchbegriff
to share	teilen, mitteilen
smart phone	Smartphone
social networking (service	soziales Netzwerk
source of information	Informationsquelle
to subscribe	sich bei etw. anmelden; abonnieren
to unsubscribe	sich bei etw. ahmelden; ein Abonnement kündigen
	Sprachnachricht
voice message	
to text	WhatsApp/Kurznachricht/SMS schreiben
text message	Kurznachricht (SMS, WhatsApp, etc) WLAN
WiFi ("Wireless Fidelity", pun upon	WLAN
the word hi-fi))	
wireless communication	drahtlose Kommunikation
(targeted) advertising	gezielte/personalisierte Werbung
app(lication)	Anwendungssoftware, "App"
to collect data	Daten sammeln
compatibility	Verträglichkeit, Kompatibilität
computer-literate	sich mit Computern auskennen; wissen, wie man Computer bedient
data	Daten
data preservation	Vorratsdatenspeicherung
data protection	Datenschutz
data theft	Datendiebstahlo
GPS (global positioning system)	globales Positionierungssystem (Satellitentechnik zur Lokalisierung)
interactive media systems	interactive Medien
to invade sb.'s privacy	in jds Privatsphare eindringen
to violate one's privacy	jds Privatspäre stören, beschädigen
to spy on sb.	jmd ausspionieren;
to track sb.	jmd verfolgen
to transfer data	Daten übertragen
virtual	virtuell, nicht real, künstlich
virus	(Computer-) Virus
24/7 news cycle	Nachrichten rund um die Uhr
breaking news	Eilmeldung
to comment on sth.	etw. kommentieren; seine Meinung zu etw äußern
infographic	Infografik



Fachschaft Englisch Manual 20

NOTES ON VOCAB – TRANSITION PHASE

news agency	Presseagentur
newsfeed	Nachrichteneinspeisung; Onlineweg zum Nachrichtenempfang
newsworthy	berichtenswert
(press/news/sports/live) coverage	(Nachrichten/Sport-/Live-) Berichterstattung
to quote; quotation	zitieren; Zitat
short attention span	kurze Aufmerksamkeitsspanne
GROWING-UP / TEENAGE DREAMS AND NIGH	
GROWING-OP/ TEENAGE DREAMS AND NIGH	YOUTH CULTURE
adolescence	Jugend; Jugendalter
adolescent	Jugendlicher; Heranwachsender
vouth	die Jugend (young people)
to criticize sb./sth	ind kritisieren
to be in conformity with sth	sich an etw. halten
(non-)conformity	(Non-)Konformität; Übereinstimmung
deviant (behaviour)	abweichend (-es Verhalten)
difference of opinion	Meinungsverschiedenheit
grown-up	erwachsen (adj.); ein Erwachsener (noun)
to hang out	abhängen (mit Freunden)
identity	Identität
to lose one's temper	die Beherrschung verlieren, wütend warden
mature	reif, erwachsen
to moan about sb./sth	über etw klagen, stöhnen
to nag	nörgeln, meckern
puberty	Pubertät
to pursue an interest	ein Interesse verfolgen
to guestion sb./sth	jmd/etw hinterfragen
to rebel (against sb./sth.)	gegen jmd/etw rebellieren, aufbegehren
role model	Vorbild
to surf the Internet	im Internet surfen
teenage(d); teenager	im Alter von 13-18
vouthful	jugendlich
youth (sub-)culture	Jugendkultur; Interessen und Lebensstil Jugendlicher
youth (sub jeunare	TEENAGE LOVE
(to have an) abortion	Abtreibung; (abtreiben lassen)
to be in love	verliebt sein
to be heartbroken	todunglücklich sein, gebrochenen Herzens
to be jealous of sb	neidisch auf imd sein
to be on the pill	die Pille nehmen
birth control	Empfängnisverhütung
to break up with sb	mit imd Schluss Machen
contraceptive	empfängnisverhütend (adj.); Verhütungsmittel (noun)
to date sb.	mit jmd zusammen sein; mit jmd gehen
to enjoy sb.'s company	die Gesellschaft eines anderen genießen
to fall in love with sb.	sich in jmd verlieben
to fancy sb. (infml.)	auf jemanden stehen
to feel affection towards sb	Zuneigung gegenüber imd fühlen
fertile	fruchtbar
to have sex with sb.; to make love to	mit jmd Sex haben; mit jmd schlafen
sb.	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,
to (mis)trust sb	jmd (miss)trauen
mutual	gegenseitig
pregnancy test	Schwangerschaftstest
premarital (sex)	vorehelicher Sex
promiscuous; promiscuity	viele Sexpartner haben; Promiskuität
to quit a relationship	eine Beziehung beenden



STÄDTISCHES GYMNASIUM LAURENTIANUM

Fachschaft Englisch

Manual 20

NOTES ON VOCAB – TRANSITION PHASE

sexual intercourse	Geschlechtsverkehr
maturity	Reife
STD (sexually transmitted disease)	Geschlechtskrankheit; sexuell übertragbare Krankheit
to throw up/to vomit	sich übergeben; kotzen (ugs)
	PARTNERS AND PEER GROUPS
to achieve sth	etw erreichen
achievement	Leistung, Erfolg. Errungenschaft
age of majority	Volljährigkeit
to aim to do sth	beabsichtigen, etw zu tun
eligibility to vote/to be eligible to	Wahlrecht/wahlberechtigt sein
vote	main only mander confige term
to enter a new phase	eine neue Phase/Lebensabschnitt beginnen
to experiment with sth.	etw ausprobieren, mit etw experimentieren
to gain experience	Erfahrung(en) sammeln
gang/a gang of youths	Jugendgang; Jugendbande
to get through sth	etw durchstehen (z.B. schwierige Zeit)
to live up to sth	etw gerecht warden; Erwartungen erfüllen, Versprechen halten
peer group/peer(s)	Altersklasse /-gruppe, Gleichaltrige
peer pressure	Gruppendruck; Gruppenzwang
quest (for) sth	das Streben/die Suche nach etw
to search for one's own identity	seine Identität suchen
socialization	Sozialisierung; sich gesellschaftlich akzeptabel verhalten
to team up with sb	mit jmd zusammenarbeiten; sich mit jmd zusammentun
transition	Übergang, Wandel
	VIOLENCE/DRUGS/TEMPTATION
addiction	Sucht
to be addicted (to sth./ sb.)	süchtig sein nach etw/jmd
aggression	Aggression, Angriff
alcoholic	alkoholisch (adj.); Alkoholiker (noun)
alcoholism	Alkoholsucht; Alkoholismus
anger at sb./sth	Zorn/Wut auf etw
to be in a bad temper	wütend sein, extrem schlechte Laune haben
to be tempted to do sth	verleitet/versucht sein, etw. zu tun
binge drinking	Alkoholexzess; bewusstes Rauschtrinken; "Komasaufen"
to bully sb	jmd schikanieren, mobben
bullying	Mobbing
drug abuse	Drogenmissbrauch
frightening	beängstigend, furchterregend
habit	Angewohnheit
habit-forming	suchterzeugend
miserable	elend, unglücklich
out of/under control	außer/unter Kontrolle
physical violence	körperliche Gewalt
to take drugs	Drogen nehmen
tempting	verlockend; versuchend
to threaten sb thrill	jmd bedrohen
	Nervenkitzel
victim	Opfer Verstee Verletzung (gegen (von Begeln)
violation (of rules)	Verstoß, Verletzung (gegen/von Regeln) UTWARD APPEARANCE AND EATING DISORDERS
anorexia	Magersucht, Anorexie
anorexia	magersüchtig
	Aussehen
appearance	Aussehen körperliche Attraktivität
physical attractiveness big	korperliche Attraktivität dick



Fachschaft Englisch Manual 20

NOTES ON VOCAB – TRANSITION PHASE

to binge on sth	sich mit etw vollstopfen
body weight	Körpergewicht
bulimia	Bulimie
chubby	mollig, pummelig
eating disorder	Essstörung
eating habit	Essgewohnheit
fat	fett, übergewichtig
to gain/lose weight	zunehmen/abnehmen
handsome (usually used with males)	gutaussehend. attraktiv
good-looking	gutaussehend
obese	übergewichtig, fettleibig
obesity	Fettleibigkeit
obsessive (about doing sth.)	zwanghaft; besessen sein (etw zu tun)
role model	Vorbild
skinny	
slim	mager, extrem dünn dünn
to starve oneself	
	hunger (um Gewicht zu verlieren) Wohlbefinden
well-being	
	FAMILY/EDUCATION
to acquire basic skills	Grundkenntnisse erwerben
A-levels	Abitur (in England)
attendance (at sth.)	Anwesenheit (bei etw)
to attend school	eine Schule besuchen
code of conduct	Verhaltensregeln, Verhaltenskodex
compulsory schooling	Schulpflicht
core subject	Hauptfach
curfew	Ausgangssperre
to cut/skip classes	blau machen
diploma	Diplom, Abschlusszeugnis
domestic quarrel	häuslicher Ärger
to drop out of school	die Schule abbrechen
graduation	Schulabschluss
to raise a child/children	Kinder erziehen
secondary education	Sekundarstufe 1
sixth form / key stage 5	Oberstufe
single-parent family	Einelternfamilie
THINK GLOBALLY, ACT LOCALLY – ENVIRONME	NTAL ISSUES
	Environment
to avert sth.	etw abwerten
to become extinct	aussterben
biodegradable	biologisch abbaubar
crude oil	Rohöl
to decompose	zerfallen, verrotten
deforestation	Abholzung
to dispose of sth	etw beseitigen, loswerden
environmentally-friendly / eco-	umweltfreundlich
friendly	
fossil fuel	fossiler Brennstoff
greenhouse effect	Treibhauseffekt
habitat	Lebensraum
to intensify sth	etw verstärken, intensivieren
(ir-)reversible	(un-)widerruflich
organic farming	Bioanbau; ökologische Landwirtschaft
ozone layer	Ozonschicht
to play a vital role in sth	ein zentrale Rolle bei etw spielen
	Page 78 of 148



STÄDTISCHES GYMNASIUM LAURENTIANUM

Manual 20

NOTES ON VOCAB – TRANSITION PHASE

power station / power plant	Kraftwerk
precipitation	Niederschlag
to prevent sb./sth. from doing sth	jmd/etw davon abhalten, etw zu tun; etw verhindern
raw material	Rohstoff
to reduce sth	etw reduzieren, vermindern
reduction	Verminderung, Reduzierung
solar radiation	Sonneneinstrahlung
source	Ouelle
to supply the demand for sth	den Bedarf an etw decken
unleaded petrol/fuel	bleifreies Benzin
vapour	Dampf
	1
water supply	Wasserversorgung POLLUTION
1 1 1	
carbon dioxide	Kohlendioxid
to contaminate	verschmutzen, kontaminieren
depletion (of the ozone layer)	Abbau der Ozonschicht
detergent	reinigend
to discharge sth	etw ablassen
to dump	etw wegschmeißen
emission	Emission, Ausstoß
to exploit sb	jmd ausbeuten
to expose sth./sb. to sth	jmd/etw einer Sache aussetzen
fertilizer	Dünger
fumes	Rauch, Dampf
to harm	beschädigen, verletzen
irrigation	Bewässerung
lead	Blei
to leak oil	Öl verlieren
living conditions	Lebensbedingungen
mercury	Quecksilber
pesticide	Pestizid
pollution	(Umwelt-) Verschmutzung
pollutant	Schadstoff
refrigerant	Kühlmittel
sewage treatment plant	Kläranlage
substance	Substanz, Stoff
waste	Müll
to waste	verschwenden, vergeuden
to waste	RECYCLING
to address sth	etw angehen, behandeln
to contribute to sth	zu etw beitragen
to cope with a problem	mit einem Problem fertig warden
to donate	spenden Ölegyetem
ecosystem	Ökosystem
energy-efficient	energieeffizient, kraftsparend, stromsparend
to recover sth	etw zurückgewinnen
to recycle waste	etw wiederverwerten
renewable	erneuerbar
solar energy	Sonnenenergie, Solarenergie
to sort rubbish	Müll sortieren
sustainable	nachhaltig
	CITIES/COMMUNITIES
accommodation	Unterkunft
affordable	leistbar, bezahlbar, erschwinglich
applicant	Bewerber

ENGLISH DEPARTMENT



Fachschaft Englisch Manual 20

NOTES ON VOCAB - TRANSITION PHASE

to apply for sth	sich für etw bewerben
to be at risk	gefährdet sein, in Gefahr sein
countryside	Landschaft
to deteriorate	verschlechtern, verfallen
housing	Unterkunft
infrastructure	Infrastruktur
to meet sb.'s basic needs	jmd Grundbedürfnisse erfüllen
poor sanitation	unzureichende Sanitäranlagen
population density	Bevölkerungsdichte
residential area	Wohngegend
rural	ländlich
set of criteria	Kriterienkatalog
urban (area)	städtisch(e Gegend)
urbanization	Verstädterung
	FASHION/CLOTHING
apparel	Kleidung, Bekleidung
brand	Marke
branding	Markenbildung
casual wear	Freizeitkleidung
to dye sth	etw färben
custom-made	individuell gefertigt
fabric	Gewebe, Stoff
fashion victim	"Modeopfer"; jmd, der immer die neusten Sachen trägt
garment	Kleidungsstück
to grow cotton	Baumwolle anbauen
locally produced	vor ort hergestellt; die Produktion wird nicht in andere (günstigere)
p	Gebiete ausgelagert
mass production	Massenfertigung, -produktion
retailer	Einzelhändler
to sew	nähen
sweatshop	Ausbeuterbetrieb
tailor-made	maßgeschneidert
vintage	klassisch, traditionell, erlesen, altmodisch
Vintage	Crossing Borders
	EDUCATION
admission/to admit sb.	Zulassung / jmd zulassen
A-levels	Abitur
competitive admission	Auswahl nach Wettbewerb (nur die Besten werden genommen)
compulsory (subject)	verpflichtend, (Pflichtfach)
diploma	Diplom, Abschlusszeugnis
to be eligible for sth	zu etwas berechtigt sein
entrance exam	Aufnahmeprüfung
extra-curricular activity	Fächer außerhalb des Stundenplan, AGs
fee	Gebühr
to fund sth	etw finanzieren, mit Geld unterstützen
graduate	einen Abschluss machen
higher education	höhere Bildung; Universitätsbildung Note
grade (AE) / mark (BE)	
to graduate from high school	die High School abschließen
optional (subject)	wahl- (Fach)
to pay tuition fees	Studiengebühren
proficient/proficiency	befähigt sein/Befähigung
report	Zeugnis
scholarship	Stipendium
social studies	Sozialkunde



STÄDTISCHES GYMNASIUM LAURENTIANUM

Fachschaft Englisch

Manual 20 **NOTES ON VOCAB – TRANSITION PHASE**

to pass an exam / test	einen Test/eine Arbeit bestehen
to fail an exam / test	einen Test/eine Arbeit nicht bestehen, durchfallen
to take a course/an exam	einen Kurs belegen / eine Arbeit schreiben
to take out a loan	sich Geld leihen
	Work
basic requirement	Grundvoraussetzung
blind application	Initiativbewerbung; Bewerbung auf einen job, der nicht ausgeschrieben ist
competitive	wettbewerbsfähig, konkurrierend
computer literacy	die Fähigkeit, mit Computern umzugehen
CV (Curriculum Vitae) (BE)	Lebenslauf
to employ sb.	jmd einstellen
employee	Arbeitnehmer, Angestellter
employer	Arbeitgeber
employment legislation	Arbeitsrecht
to go freelance	freiberuflich arbeiten
to gain work experience	Arbeitserfahrung sammeln
job advert	Stellenausschreibung
job interview	Vorstellungsgespräch
job market	Arbeitsmarkt
job offer	Jobangebot
letter of application	schriftl.iche Bewerbung
qualification(s)	Qualifikation(en), Kompetenzen
to recruit sb./recruitment	jmd anwerben; einstellen / Anwerbung, Personalbeschaffung
to renew a contract	einen Vertrag verlängern
résumé (AE)	Lebenslauf
to retrain	umschulen
(un)skilled worker	(un)gelernter Arbeiter, Fachkraft
semi-skilled	angelernter Arbeiter
placement/internship	Praktikum
vocational training	Berufsschule
working environment	Arbeitsumgebung
work experience	Arbeitserfahrung
to work part-time	einen Nebenjob haben; Teilzeit arbeiten
	VOLUNTEERISM
after-school tutoring	Nachhilfe, Hausaufgabenbetreuung
civil service	öffentlicher Dienst, Beamtentum
community service	Gemeinschaftdienst
disadvantaged	benachteiligt
gap year	das Jahr zwischen Schule und Universität, häufig im Ausland verbracht
to meet common challenges	den allgemeinen Anforderungen entsprechen
to mentor sb	jmd betreuen
to take the opportunity	eine Gelegenheit ergreifen
to participate in sth	an etw teilnehmen
to seize the opportunity	eine Chance nutzen
to serve a common purpose	dem Gemeinwohl dienen
(social) commitment	(soziales) Engagement
social justice	soziale Gerechtigkeit
social services	Sozialdienst, Sozialamt
voluntary	freiwillig, ehrenamtlich
volunteer	ein Freiwilliger, ein Ehrenamt
to volunteer	sich ehrenamtlich engagieren
GOING ABROAD	
to apply for a visa	ein Visum beantragen
certificate of vaccination	Impfpass
ENGLISH DEPARTMENT	Page 81 of 148

ENGLISH DEPARTMENT



Fachschaft Englisch Manual 20

NOTES ON VOCAB – TRANSITION PHASE

cross-cultural communication	interkulturelle Kommunikation
developing country/world	Entwicklungsland / Dritte Welt
exchange student	Austauschschüler
first-aid courses/skills	Erste-Hilfe-Kurse
foreign currency	ausländische Währung
to get a briefing	eine Kurzeinweisung erhalten
international driving permit	internationale Fahrerlaubnis
international volunteering	freiwilliges Auslandsjahr / freiwilliger Auslandsdienst
reverse culture shock	Kulturschock, wenn man wieder ins Heimatland zurückkehrt
safety precautions	Sicherheitsvorkehrungen
to settle back in	sich wieder an zu Hause gewöhnen
stay abroad	sich längere Zeit im Ausland befinden
to study abroad	im Ausland studieren
travel insurance	Reiseversicherung
to travel overseas	nach Übersee reisen
	CHARITY
charity organization	gemeinnützige Organisation; Wohltätigkeitsorganisation
charitable	gemeinnützig
to donate/give sth. to charity	für einen guten Zweck spenden
to be engaged in sth	in etw tätig sein; mit etwas beschäftigt sein
to finance a project	ein Projekt finanziell unterstützen/finanzieren
funding	Geld für eine Sache zur Verfügung stellen
fundraising	Spendensammlung
fundraiser	Benefizveranstaltung; auch: Spendensammler
idealism	Idealismus; starker Glaube daran, dass etwas verbessert warden kann,
	obwohl es nicht besonders realistisch scheint
living conditions	Lebensbedingungen
NGO (non-governmental	Nichtregierungsorganisation; häufig Wohltätigkeitsorganisationen
organization)	
to take your chances	seine Chance nutzen; etwas wagen



STÄDTISCHES GYMNASIUM LAURENTIANUM

Manual 21

NOTES ON VOCAB – QUALIFYING STAGE

THE UNITED KINGDOM	
act, bill, law,	Gesetz
the law	das Gesetz
agreement	Abkommen
citizen	Bürger
conservative	konservativ
Conservative Party ("Tories")	die Conservative Party
a conservative	ein Konservativer
constitution	Verfassung
delegate	Delegierter
democracy	Demokratie
elect	wählen
to be elected	gewählt werden
election	Wahl
electorate	Wählerschaft
election period	Wahlperiode
election campaign	Wahlkampf
executive	die Exekutive
federal	Bundes
government	Regierung
to govern	regieren
house	Kammer des Parlaments
judiciary	die Judikative
labour	Arbeit
Labour Party	die Labour Party
legislature	die Legislative
legislative	gesetzgebend
minister	Minister
prime minister (the Prime Minister)	Premierminister
ministry	Ministerium
MP Member of Parliament	Abgeordneter
office	Amt. Ministerium
to hold office	ein Amt innehaben
Home Office/Foreign Office	Innenministerium, Außenministerium
parliament	Parlament
party	Partei
policy	politisches Ziel, Maßnahmen
economic policy	Wirtschaftspolitik
foreign policy	Außenpolitik
politics	Politik
political	politisch
politician	Politiker
poll	Abstimmung, Umfrage, Wahl,
polling-station	Wahllokal
referendum	Volksbefragung, Volksentscheid
representative	(Volks-) Vertreter
secretary	Minister
foreign secretary	Außenminister
the people	das Volk
to support	unterstützen
vote	Stimme
	stimmen, wählen
to vote	Wähler
voter	
wing	Flügel



Fachschaft Englisch Manual 21

NOTES ON VOCAB – QUALIFYING STAGE

right/left wing	rechter/linker Flügel
POST-COLONIALISM AND MIGRATION	
adapt to sth.	sich an etw. anpassen
arranged marriage	eine arrangierte Ehe
asylum seekers	Asylsuchende
be oppressed by someone	von jemandem unterdrückt werden
blend in	sich einfügen, integrieren
citizenship	Nationalität, Staatsangehörigkeit
clash between/of two cultures	das Aufeinanderprallen zweier Kulturen
colonialism;;	Kolonialismus
colonizer	der Besiedler
colonized	kolonisiert
discriminate against someone	jemanden benachteiligen/diskriminieren
empire	das Imperium
ethnic minorities	ethnische Minderheiten
ethnicity	Ethnizität, Volkszugehörigkeit
excluded (from)	(von) etw. ausgeschlossen
hold racist attitudes	eine rassistische Haltung/Einstellung haben
hostile	feindlich, feindselig, ablehnend
imperialism;	Imperialismus
imperialistic	Imperialistisch
indefinite leave to remain	unbeschränkte Aufenthaltserlaubnis
indigenous	Einheimischer eines Landes
loss of identity	Identitätsverlust
mutual understanding and respect	gegenseitiges/beidseitiges Verständnis und Respekt
open-minded vs. narrow-minded	aufgeschlossen vs. engstirnig
outsider	Außenseiter
pluralistic society	eine pluralistische Gesellschaft
racial equality	Gleichwertigkeit verschiedener Rassen
receive/be granted citizenship	die Staatsbürgerschaft erhalten
THE UNITED STATES AND THE AMERICAN DREA	AM
assimilation	Assimilation; Angleichung an Bestehendes
base rate	Leitzinsen
civil disobedience	bürgerlicher Ungehorsam
Civil Rights Movement	die Bürgerrechtsbewegung
credit rating	Beurteilung der Kreditwürdigkeit, Bonitätsbeurteilung
cultural heritage	Kulturerbe; kulturelles Erbe
Declaration of independence	Unabhängigkeitserklärung
discrimination	Diskriminierung
deprivation	Benachteiligung
drop in consumption	Konsumrückgang
E pluribus unum	lat.: aus vielen Eines; ursprünglich bezog sich dieser Ausspruch auf die
	verschiedenen Staaten, aus denen die USA bestehen; heute bezieht er
	sich vielmehr auf die vielen ethnischen Gruppen und Volksgruppen,
	aus denen sich die Bevölkerung der USA zusammensetzt
economic stimulus plan	Konjunkturprogramm
entrepreneur	Unternehmer
equality	Gleichheit
equal opportunities	gleiche Chancen
fame	Ruhm
freedom; \sim of speech; \sim of the	Freiheit; Redefreiheit; Pressefreiheit; Religionsfreiheit
press; religious ~	
frontier	Grenze (zwischen Zivilisation und Wildnis)
gold rush	Goldrausch
government bailouts	Rettungsaktion, die von der Regierung ausgehen



STÄDTISCHES GYMNASIUM LAURENTIANUM

Fachschaft Englisch

Manual 21

NOTES ON VOCAB – QUALIFYING STAGE

identity	Identität
Immigration Act	Einwanderungsgesetz
"in God we trust"	Wir vertrauen auf Gott; offizieller Wahlspruch der USA
inauguration	Amtseinführung
inaugural speech	Amtsantrittsrede
liberation	Befreiung
loan	Darlehen
melting pot vs. salad bowl	"Schmelztiegel" vs. "Salatschüssel" (dahinter verbergen sich unter- schiedliche Konzepte, die die Vielfalt unterschiedlicher Kulturen in den USA charakterisieren)
mortgage	Hypothek
multiculturalism	Multikulturalität
naturalisation	Einbürgerung
pioneer; - spirit	Pionier; Pioniergeist
Promised Land; the land of milk	das gelobte Land
and honey; God's own country; the New Canaan	
recession	Rezession
refugee	Flüchtling
refugee camp	Flüchtlingslager
segregation; desegregation	Rassentrennung; Aufhebung der Rassentrennung
success	Erfolg
supply and demand	Angebot und Nachfrage
the housing bubble	die Immobilienblase
the pursuit of happiness	das Streben nach Glück
to achieve financial security	finanzielle Sicherheit erlangen
to attain self-fulfilment	sich selbst verwirklichen
to be persecuted;	verfolgt werden
religious/ political persecution	religiöse/politische Verfolgung
to go from rags to riches; from dishwasher to millionaire	vom Tellerwäscher zum Millionär
to immigrate; Immigrant; immigra-	einwandern; Einwanderer; Einwanderung;
tion;	-
an influx of immigrants	Zustrom von Einwanderern
to incur a loss	(einen) Verlust machen
to pledge allegiance to the flag	den Fahneneid leisten
to prosper	Erfolg haben; in Wohlstand leben
to settle; settler; settlement	besiedeln; Siedlung
unalienable/inalienable rights	unveräußerliche Rechte
unencumbered	unbelastet
GLOBALISATION	
Americanization	Amerikanisierung
anti-global ist	Globalisierungsgegner/-kritiker
backwardness	Rückständigkeit
company philosophy	Geschäfts-/Firmenphilosophie
competition	Konkurrenz(kampf)/Wettbewerb;
to be competitive	konkurrenzfähig sein
corporate identity	Firmenimage
crop diseases	Krankheiten von Pflanzen/Saatgut
debt relief	Schuldenerlass, Entschuldung
desertification	die Desertifikation/Wüstenbildung, das Vordringen der Wüste
developing countries	Entwicklungsländer
development aid	Entwicklungshilfe
driving forces of globalization	die Antriebskräfte der Globalisierung
drought	Dürren, Dürreperioden

ENGLISH DEPARTMENT



Fachschaft Englisch Manual 21

NOTES ON VOCAB - QUALIFYING STAGE

Section Structure Witschaftswachstum economic prosperity Ökonomischer Wohlstand emerging markets Schwellenflander environmental damage Umweltzerstörung environmental damage Hochwasser, Überschwemmungen global interconnection globale Querverbindungen global interconnection globale Querverbindungen global marketplace globale Supermacht global super power eine globale Supermacht global anarketplace global super power eine globale (Carevarimung, greenhouse gases Treibhausgase human rights Menschenrechte humar-generated carbon dioxide dic Gewinspanne erhöhen Industrial Age das Industrieziatlater industrial Age das Industrieziatlater industrial antions industrieziatlater interdependene of economy and gegenseitige Abhangikeit/Verflechtung von Ökonomie und Ökologie	earth's atmosphere	die Erdatmosphäre
economic prosperity økonomischer Wohlstand emerging markets Schwellenländer environmental commitment Umweltreisstz environmental damage Umweltreistörung environmental damage Umweltreinstaz environmental damage Umweltreistörung environmental fyriendly umweltreistörung ekspanne fait trade fait trade faiter Handel flobal marketplace globale Querverbindungen global interconnection globale Querverbindungen global warming Erderwärmung greenhouse gases Treibhausgase human rights Menschen produziertes Kohlenstoffdioxid increase profit margins Id Gewinnspanne erhöhen industrial antions Industrielander/nationen industrial antions Industrielander/variationale investütonsbedingungen Iabour laws labour market Arbeitsmarkt labour market Arbeitsgesteze labour market Arbeitsgesteze labour market Nichreigterungsorganisation micor credits Massent		
emerging markets Schwellenländer environmental commitment Umweltensatz environmental damage Umweltreundlich environmental grindly umweltreundlich expansion of capitalism Ausbreitung des Kapitalismus fair trade fairer Handel floods Hochwasser, Überschwermungen global interconnection globale Querverbindungen global marketplace globale Supermacht global super power eine globale durch enschnet numar.generated carbon dioxide durch Menschen produziertes Kohlenstoffdioxid increase profit margins die Gewinnspanne erhöhen Industrial Age das Industriezitalter interrational stock markets internationale Börsenmärkte investment climate Investitionsbedingungen labour market Arbeitsgestz Nichrigitsige Ziele langfristige Ziele low-raket Arbeitsgestz Nichregierungsorganisation		
environmental commitment Umweltreinsatz environmental damage Umweltzerstörung environmentally friendly umweltzerstörung environmentally friendly umweltreinsatz environmentally friendly umweltreinsatz expension of capitalism Ausbreitung des Kapitalismus fair trade fairer Handel floods Hochwasser, Überschwemmungen global marketplace globale Querverbindungen global marketplace globale Querverbindungen global marketplace globale Weltfirma global marketplace globale Supermacht global warming Erderwärnung greenhouse gases Treibhausgase human rights Menschen produziertes Kohlenstoffdioxid increase profit margins die Gewinnspanne erhöhen Industrial Age das Industriezdetter industrial nations Industriezdetter industrial nations Industriezdetter investment climate Investitionale Körsenmarkte Investitionale Körsenmarkte Investitionale Körsenmarkte Investitionsbedingungen Iabour laws Arbeitsgesetze Iabour market Arbeitsgesetze Iabour market Arbeitsgezetze Iabour market Niedrighonalen must Massentourismus melting of glaciers das Schmelzen von Gletschern micro-credits Kleinkredite NGO (non-governmental organisa- Nichtregierungsorganisation NGU (non-governmental organisa- tion) Outsourcing Produktionsverlagerung population overshoot, overpopula tion, excess of population excess of pop		
environmental damage Umweltzerstörung environmentally friendly umweltfreundlich expansion of capitalism Ausbreitung des Kapitalismus fair trade fairer Handel floods Hochwasser, Überschwemmungen global interconnection globale Querverbindungen global interconnection globale Querverbindungen global marketplace globaler Marktplatz global super power eine globale Supermacht global super power eine globale Supermacht global super power eine globale Supermacht global super gover eine globale Supermacht global super power eine globale Supermacht global super gover eine globale Supermacht interase profit margins die Gewinnspanne erhöhen Industrial Age das Industrizeitater industrial Age das Industrizeitater interdependence of economy and gegensetige Abhängigkeit/Verflechtung von Ökonomie und Ökologie ecology gester eine globale Börsenmärkte interational stock markets internationale Börsenmärkte Investitionsbedingungen labour laws Arbeitsgesetze labour laws Arbeitsgesetze labour laws Massenkommunikation; -medien mass comunication; mass media Massenkommunikation; -medien mass contunication; mass media Massenkommunikation; -medien micro-credits Kleinkredite Nichtregierungsorganisation tion, excess of population porshout, overpopula- tion, excess of population poresthout, overpopula- tion, excess of population poresthout, overpopula- tion, excess of population expensions den Austoß von Treibhausgasen reduzieren reduce the cost of production computergesteuerte Produktion/Fertigung supremacy Vormachtstellung, Überlegenheit sustanability Nachhaltikeki, Zukunftsfähigkeit sustanability Nachhaltikeki, Zukunftsfähigkeit sustanability Nachhaltikeki, Zukunftsfähigkeit sustanability Nachhaltikeki, Zukunftsfähigkeit sustanability Markenpol		
ervironmentally friendly unweltreundlich expansion of capitalism Ausbreitung des Kapitalismus fair trade fairer Handel floods Hochwasser, Überschwemmungen global marketplace globale Querverbindungen global marketplace globale Querverbindungen global marketplace globale Wartfirma global marketplace globale Supermacht global warming Erderwärnung greenhouse gases Treibhausgase human rights Menschenrechte human-generated carbon dioxide durch Menschen produzieres Kohlenstoffdioxid increase profit margins die Gewinnspanne erhöhen Industrial Age das Industriezeitalter industrial nations Industriezeitalter industrial nations Industriezeitalter industrial nations Industriezeitalter interdependence of economy and gegenseitige Abhängigkeit/Verflechtung von Ökonomie und Ökologie ecology international stock markets internationale Börsenmärkte investment climate Investitionsbedingungen labour laws Arbeitsgeszte labour market Arbeitsgeszte labour market Arbeitsmarkt long-range goals langfristige Ziele low-wage countries Niedrighnlander mass communication; mass media Massenhommunikation; -medien mastourism Massendus melting of glaciers das Schmelzen von Gletschern micro-credits Kleinkredite Niedrighohlander population overshoot, overpopula- tion, excess of population population overshoot, overpopula- tion, excess of population population overshoot, overpopula- tion, excess of population poverty Armut reduce the cost of production de naussofs von Treibhausgasen reduzieren reduce the cost of production den Aussofs von Treibhausgasen reduzieren reduce the cost of production den Aussofs von Treibhausgasen reduzieren rise in global temperature ein weltweiter Temperaturanstieg surface transport Bodentransport sustanability Nachhalitykeit, Zukunftsfahigkeit sustanability Nachhalitykeit, Zukunftsfahigkeit sustanability Nachhalitykeit, Zukunftsfahigkeit sustanability Nachhalitykeit, Zukunftsfahigkeit sustanability Markenpolitik undernuttrition, malnuttrition Unterernährung; Mangelernährung		
expansion of capitalismAusbreitung des Kapitalismusfair tradefairer HandelfloodsHochwasser, Überschwemmungenglobal interconnectionglobale Warktplatzglobal playerWeltfirmaglobal super powereine globale Supermachtglobal super powereine globale Supermachtglobal marktplatzMenschenrechtehuman rightsMenschenrechtehuman-generated carbon dioxidedurch Menschen produziertes Kohlenstoffdioxidincrease profit marginsdie Gewinnspanne erhöhenIndustrial Agedas Industrizeitalterindustrial Agedas Industrizeitalterindustrial agefairernationale Börsenmärkteinvestiment formatInvestitionsfedingungenlabour lawsArbeitsgestzelabour marketArbeitsgestzelabour marketNiedrigbonländermass communication; mass mediaMassentourismusmetroregolslangfristige Zielelow-wage countriesNiedrigbonländermetroregolsdas Schmelzen von Gletschernmicro-creditsKleinkrediteNichtregierungsorganisationJoberko'son freibausgasen reduzierenpopulation overshoot, overpopula-Uberbevölkerungpopulation overshoot, overpopula-Uberbevölkerungreduce greenhouse gas emissionsden Ausstofs von Treibhausgasen reduzierenreduce freendutioncomputergetremenduzierenreduce tracet of productionden Austofs von Treibhausgasen reduzierenreduce greenhouse gas emissionsden Ausstofs von Treibhausgase		
fairer tande fairer Handel floods Hochwasser, Überschwemnungen global marketplace globale Querverbindungen global super power eine globale Supermacht global super power eine globale Supermacht global super power eine globale Supermacht global warning Erderwärmung greenhouse gases Treibhausgase human rights Menschenrechte human rights durch Menschen produziertes Kohlenstoffdioxid increase profit margins die Gewinnspanne erhöhen Industrial Age das Industriezeitalter industrial nations Industrielader/-nationen international stock markets internationale Börsenmärkte investment climate Investitionsbedingungen labour market Arbeitsgesetze labour market Arbeitsgesetze labour market Arbeitsgestige Xiele long-range goals langfristige Xiele low-wage countries Niedrighnländer mass tourismus Massentourismus metting of glaciers das Schmelzen von Gletschern mitro-credits Kleinkredite Nicdr		
floods Hochwasser, Überschwemmungen global interconnection globale Querverbindungen global player Weltfirma global player Weltfirma global super power eine globale Supermacht global warming Erderwärmung greenhouse gases Treibhausgase human rights Menschenrechte human rights die Gewinnspanne erhöhen Industrial Age das Industriezeitalter industrial Age das Industriezeitalter industrial Age das Industriezeitalter industrial Age das Industriezeitalter interdependence of economy and ecology gegenseitige Abhängigkeit/Verflechtung von Ökonomie und Ökologie investiment Climate Investitonsbedingungen labour market Arbeitsgesetze labour market Arbeitsgesetze labour market Arbeitsgesetze labour market Massentourismus mass comunication; mass media Massentourismus metro-credits Kleinkredite NGO (non-governmental organisa- tion) Poduktionsverlagerung opulatio		
global interconnection globale Querverbindungen global marketplace globale Marktplatz global super power eine globale Supermacht global super power eine globale Supermacht global super power eine globale Supermacht global warning Erderwärmung greenhouse gases Treibhausgase human-generated carbon dioxide durch Menschen produziertes Kohlenstoffdioxid increase profit margins die Gewinnspanne erhöhen Industrial Age das Industrielaer/-nationen industrial nations Industrielaer/-nationen international stock markets internationale Börsenmärkte international stock markets internationale Börsenmärkte labour laws Arbeitsgesetze labour laws Arbeitsgesetze labour laws das Schmlezn von Gletschern mass communication; mass media Massentourismus melting of glaciers das Schmlezn von Gletschern micro-credits Kleinkredite NGO (non-governmental organisa-tion) Nichtregierungsorganisation outsouring Produktionskoretn senken		
global marketplaceglobaler Marktplatzglobal playerWeltfirmaglobal super powereine globale Supermachtglobal warmingErderwärmunggreenhouse gasesTreibhausgasehuman rightsMenschenrechtehuman-generated carbon dioxidedurch Menschen produziertes Kohlenstoffdioxidincrease profit marginsdie Gewinnspanne erhöhenindustrial Agedas Industriezeitalterindustrial nationsIndustrieländer/mationenecologyinternationale Börsenmärkteinternational stock marketsinternationale Börsenmärktelabour narketArbeitsgesetzelabour narketArbeitsgesetzelabour narketMassenkommunikation; -medienmitor opendisdia Schmelzen von Gletschernmicro-creditsMassenkommunikation; -medienmotorrigProduktionsverlagerungoutsurcingProduktionsverlagerungpolitical turmoilpolitischer Aufruh, politische TurbulenzenoutorringProduktionsverlagerungpolitical turmoilpolitischer Aufruh, politische Turbulenzenpolutionden Austoß von Treibhausgasen reduzierenreduce greenhouse gas emissionsden Austoß von Treibhausgasen reduzierenreduce the cost of productionden Austoß von Treibhausgasen reduzierenreduce treenhouse gas emissionsden Austoß von Treibhausgasen reduzierenreduce greenhouse gas emissionsden Austoß von Treibhausgasen reduzierenreduce greenhouse gas emissionsden Austoß von Treibhausgasen reduzierenreduce greenhous		
global playerWeltfirmaglobal super powereine globale Supermachtglobal warmingErderwärnunggreenhouse gasesTreibhausgasehuman rightsMenschen produziertes Kohlenstoffdioxidindustrial Agedas Industriezeitalterindustrial nationsIndustrielander/-nationeninterratependence of economy andgegenseitige Abhängigkeit/Verflechtung von Ökonomie und Ökologieecologyinternational stock marketsinterrational stock marketsinternationale Börsenmärktelabour lawsArbeitsgesetzelabour lawsArbeitsgesetzelabour ansketNiedriglohnlanderlow-wage countriesNiedriglohnlandermass communication; mass mediaMassenkommunikation; -medienmass tourismMassenkommunikationmelting of glaciersdas Schmelzen von Gletschernmicro-creditsKleinkrediteNichtregierungProduktionsverlagerungpollutionVerschmutzungpollutionVerschmutzungpolution vorshoot, overpopula- tion,der Austoß von Treibhausgasen reduzierenreduce greenhouse gas emissionsden Austoß von Treibhausgasen reduzierenreduce the cost of productioncomputersterentranstiegreduce the cost of productioncomputersterentranstiegreduce the cost of productioncomputersterentransportsustrabeltimeGuernapportsustrabeltimekurstreckenflügesustrabeltimeGuernapportsuboterimeGuernapportsurgerSochmelzen t		
global super powereine globale Supermachtglobal warningErderwärmunggreenhouse gasesTreibhausgasehuman rightsMenschenrechtehuman generated carbon dioxidedurch Menschen produziertes Kohlenstoffdioxidincrease profit marginsdie Gewinnspanne erhöhenIndustrial Agedas Industriezeitalterindustrial nationsIndustrieätalterinterdependence of economy and ecologygegenseitige Abhängigkeit/Verflechtung von Ökonomie und Ökologieinternational stock marketsinternationale Börsenmärkteinvestment climateInvesttionsbedingungenlabour marketArbeitsgesetzelabour marketArbeitsgesetzelabour marketNiedriglohnländermass communication; mass mediaMassenkommunikation; -medienmicro-creditsKleinkrediteNGO (non-governmental organisa- tion)NichtregierungsorganisationoutsourcingProduktionsverlagerungpolitical turmoilpolitischer Aufruhr, politische Turbulenzenpolitical turmoilpolitischer Aufruhr, politische Turbulenzenpolitical turmoilecols of productionreduce greenhouse gas emissionsden Ausstoß von Treibhausgasen reduzierenreduce the cost of productioncomputergesteuter Produktionskosten senken rise in global temperaturerobutzed productioncomputergesteutere Produktion/Fertigungshort-haul flightsKurzstreckenflügesurface transportBodentransportsurface transportBodentransportsurface transportBodentra	global marketplace	
global warmingErderwärmunggreenhouse gasesTreibhausgasehuman rightsMenschenproduziertes Kohlenstoffdioxidincrease profit marginsdie Gewinnspanne erhöhenIndustrial Agedas Industriezeitalterindustrial Agedas Industriezeitalterindustrial nationsIndustrielander/-nationeninterdependence of economy andgegenseitige Abhängigkeit/Verflechtung von Ökonomie und Ökologieecologyinternational stock marketsinternational stock marketsinternationale Börsenmärktelabour lawsArbeitsgesetzelabour lawsArbeitsgesetzelabour rismMassenkommunikation; -medienmass communication; mass mediaMassenkommunikation; -medienmass communication; mass mediaMassenkommunikation; -medienmotion operverimental organisa-NichtregierungsorganisationoutsourcingProduktionsverlagerungpolitical turmoilpolitischer Aufruhr, politische TurbulenzenpolitionVerschmutzungpopulation overshoot, overpopula- tion,Überbevölkerungreduce greenhouse gas emissionsden Ausstoß von Treibhausgasen reduzierenreduce the cost of productioncomputerstreaturanstiegrobotized productioncomputerstreaturansportsurface transportBodentransportsurface transportBodentransportsurface transportBodentransportsurface transportBodentransportsurface transportBodentransportsurface transportBodentransportsurface tr	global player	
greenhouse gasesTreibhausgasehuman rightsMenschenrechtehuman-generated carbon dioxidedurch Meschen produziertes Kohlenstoffdioxidincrease profit marginsdie Gewinnspanne erhöhenIndustrial Agedas Industriezetalterindustrial nationsIndustrieländer/-nationeninterdependence of economy and ecologygegenseitige Abhängigkeit/Verflechtung von Ökonomie und Ökologieinternational stock marketsinternationale Börsenmärkteinternational stock marketsinternationskeligengenlabour lawsArbeitsgesetzelabour marketlangfristige Zielelong-range goalslangfristige Zielelow-wage countriesNiedriglohnlandermass communication; mass mediaMassentourismusmelting of glaciersdas Schmelzen von Gletschernmicro-creditsKleinkrediteNichtregierungsorganisationverschmutzungtoin)politischer Aufruhr, politische TurbulenzenpollutionVerschmutzungpolution overshoot, overpopula-Uberbevölkerungreduce greenhouse gas emissionsden Ausstoß von Treibhausgasen reduzierenreduce the cost of productioncomputerestreuterterereduce the cost of productioncomputerestreuteresurface transportBodertransportsurface transportBodertransportsurface transportBodertransportsurface transportBodertransportsurface transportBodertransportsurface transportBodertransportsurface handpenHandel<		eine globale Supermacht
human rightsMenschenrechtehuman-generated carbon dioxidedurch Menschen produziertes Kohlenstoffdioxidincrease profit marginsdie Gewinnspanne erhöhenIndustrial Agedas Industriezeitalterindustrial nationsIndustrieänder/-nationeninterdependence of economy andgegenseitige Abhängigkeit/Verflechtung von Ökonomie und Ökologieecologyinternational stock marketsinternational stock marketsinternationale Börsenmärkteinvestment climateInvestitionsbedingungenlabour lawsArbeitsgesetzelabour marketArbeitsgesetzelabour goalslangfristige Zielelow-wage countriesNiedriglohnländermass communication; mass mediaMassenkommunikation; -medienmass tourismMassentourismusmelting of glaciersdas Schmelzen von Gletschernmicro-creditsKleinkrediteNGO (non-governmental organisa- tion)Produktionsverlagerungpolitical turmoilpolitischer Aufruhr, politische TurbulenzenpolutionVerschmutzungpopulation overshoot, overpopula- tion,die Ausstoß von Treibhausgasen reduzierenreduce greenhouse gas emissionsden Ausstoß von Treibhausgasen reduzierenrise in global temperatureein weltweiter Temperaturanstiegrobutzed productioncomputeresteuerte Produktion/Fertigungsurface transportBodentransportsurface transportBodentransportsurface transportBodentransportsurface transportBodentransportsurface tran		
human-generated carbon dioxidedurch Menschen produziertes Kohlenstoffdioxidincrease profit marginsdie Gewinnspanne erhöhenIndustrial Agedas Industriezeitalterindustrial nationsIndustrieländer/-nationeninterdependence of economy andgegenseitige Abhängigkeit/Verflechtung von Ökonomie und Ökologieecologyinternational stock marketsinternational stock marketsinternationale Börsenmärkteinvestment climateInvestitionsbedingungenlabour lawsArbeitsgesetzelabour lawsArbeitsgesetzelabour awsNiedriglohnländermass communication; mass mediaMassenkommunikation; -medienmass tourismMassenkommunikation; -medienmass tourismMassenkommunikation; -medienmicor-creditsKleinkrediteNGO (non-governmental organisa- tion)VerschmutzungpollutionVerschmutzungpollutionverschmutzungpollutionverschmutzungpollutionVerschmutzungpollutionArmutreduce greenhouse gas emissionsden Ausstoß von Treibhausgasen reduzierenreduce the cost of productioncomputerestreaturanstiegrobotized productioncomputerestreaturanstiegrobotized productioncomputerestreaturanstiegsurface transportBodentransportsurface transportBodentransportsurface transportBodentransportsurface transportBodentransportsurface transportBodentransportsurface transportBodent		
increase profit marginsdie Gewinnspanne erhöhenIndustrial Agedas Industriezeitalterindustrial nationsIndustrieländer/-nationeninterdependence of economy and ecologygegenseitige Abhängigkeit/Verflechtung von Ökonomie und Ökologieinternational stock marketsinternationale Börsenmärktelinvestment climateInvestitionsbedingungenlabour lawsArbeitsgesetzelabour marketArbeitsgesetzelong-range goalslangfristige Zielelow-wage countriesNiedriglohnländermass tourismMassenkommunikation; -medienmass tourismMassenkommunikation; -medienmorto-creditsKleinkrediteNich regierungsorganisationNichtregierungsorganisationtion)politischer Aufruhr, politische TurbulenzenpolutionVerschmutzungpolution overshoot, overpopula- tion,Uberbevölkerungpolutiondie Ausstoß von Treibhausgasen reduzierenreduce greenhouse gas emissionsden Ausstoß von Treibhausgasen reduzierenrise in global temperatureein weltweiter Temperaturanstiegrise in global temperatureein weltweiter Temperaturanstiegrobuzed productioncomputergesteuerte Produktion/Fertigungsurface transportBodentransportsurface transportBodentransportsurface transportBodentransportuterrenalterInvestrene Freibrise in global temperatureein weltweiter Temperaturanstiegrobuztize transportBodentransportsurface transportBodentran		
Industrial Agedas Industriezeitalterindustrial nationsIndustrieländer/-nationeninterdependence of economy andgegenseitige Abhängigkeit/Verflechtung von Ökonomie und Ökologieecologyinternational stock marketsinternational stock marketsinternationale Börsenmärkteinvestment climateInvestitionsbedingungenlabour lawsArbeitsgesetzelabour lawsArbeitsgesetzelabour iawsArbeitsgesetzelow-wage countriesNiedriglohnländermass communication; mass mediaMassenkommunikation; -medienmass tourismMassenkommunikation; -medienmass tourismMassenkomrunikation; -medienmicro-creditsKleinkrediteNGO (non-governmental organisa- tion)NichtregierungsorganisationoutsourcingProduktionsverlagerungpolitical turmoilpolitischer Aufruhr, politische TurbulenzenpolutionVerschmutzungverscess of populationden Ausstoß von Treibhausgasen reduzierenreduce greenhouse gas emissionsden Ausstoß von Treibhausgasen reduzierenreduce the cost of productioncomputergesteuerte Produktion/Fertigungrise in global temperatureein weltweiter Temperaturanstiegrobotized productioncomputergesteuerte Produktion/FertigungsupremacyVormachtstellung, ÜberlegenheitsustainabilityNachaltigkeit, Zukunftsfähigkeitsweatshopausbeuterischer BetriebtradeHandeltradeHandeltradeHandel		
industrial nationsIndustrieländer/-nationeninterdependence of economy and ecologygegenseitige Abhängigkeit/Verflechtung von Ökonomie und Ökologieinternational stock marketsinternationale Börsenmärkteinvesttiionsbedingungenlabour lawslabour lawsArbeitsgesetzelabour marketArbeitsgesetzelong-range goalslangfristige Zielelow-wage countriesNiedriglohnländermass communication; mass mediaMassenkommunikation; -medienmass tourismMassenkommunikation; -medienmass communication; mass mediaMassenkommunikation; -medienmass courismMassenkommunikation; -medienmotor-creditsKleinkrediteNGO (non-governmental organisa- tion)NichtregierungsorganisationoutsourcingProduktionsverlagerungpollutionVerschmutzungpollutionVerschmutzungpopulation overshoot, overpopula- tion,den Ausstoß von Treibhausgasen reduzierenreduce greenhouse gas emissionsden Ausstoß von Treibhausgasen reduzierenrise in global temperatureein weltweiter Temperaturanstiegrobotized productioncomputerstelenter Temperaturanstiegsurface transportBodentransportsurface transportBodentransportsurface transportBodentransportsurface transportBodentransportsurface transportMastenpolitikundernuttike, kunftsfähigkeitausbeuterischer BetriebtradeHandeltradeHandeltradeHandel<		
interdependence of economy and ecologygegenseitige Abhängigkeit/Verflechtung von Ökonomie und Ökologieinternational stock marketsinternationale Börsenmärkteinvestment climateInvestitionsbedingungenlabour lawsArbeitsgesetzelabour marketArbeitsgesetzelong-range goalslangfristige Zielelow-wage countriesNiedriglohnländermass communication; mass mediaMassenkommunikation; -medienmass tourismMassenkommunikation; -medienmelting of glaciersdas Schmelzen von Gletschernmicro-creditsKleinkrediteNGO (non-governmental organisa- tion)NichtregierungsorganisationoutsourcingProduktionsverlagerungpolitical turmoilpolitischer Aufruhr, politische Turbulenzenpopulation overshoot, overpopula- tion,Überbevölkerungreduce greenhouse gas emissionsden Ausstoß von Treibhausgasen reduzierenreduce greenhouse gas emissionsden Ausstoß von Treibhausgasen reduzierenrise in global temperatureein weltweiter Temperaturanstiegrise in global temperatureBodentransportsustanabilityNachhaltigkeit, ZukunftsfähigkeitsustanabilityNachhaltigkeit, Zukunftsfähigkeitsweatshopausbeuterischer BetriebtradeHandeltradeHandel	Industrial Age	das Industriezeitalter
ecologyinternational stock marketsinternationale Börsenmärkteinvestment climateInvestitionsbedingungenlabour lawsArbeitsgesetzelabour marketArbeitsgesetzelong-range goalsIangfristige Zielelow-wage countriesNiedriglohnländermass communication; mass mediaMassenkommunikation; -medienmass tourismMassenkommunikation; -medienmass tourismMassenkommunikation; -medienmass tourismMassenkommunikation; -medienmore-creditsKleinkrediteNiCO (non-governmental organisa- tion)NichtregierungsorganisationoutsourcingProduktionsverlagerungpolitical turmoilpolitischer Aufruhr, politische Turbulenzenpopulation overshoot, overpopula- tion,Überbevölkerungexcess of populationden Ausstoß von Treibhausgasen reduzierenreduce the cost of productiondie Produktionskosten senkenrise in global temperatureein weltweiter Temperaturanstiegrobotized productioncomputergesteuerte Produktion/Fertigungshort-haul flightsKurzstreckenflügesustanabilityNachhaltgkeit, Zukunftsfähigkeitsweatshopausbeuterischer BetriebtradeHandeltradeHandeltrademark policyMarkenpolitikundernutrition, malnutritionUnterernährung; Mangelernährung	industrial nations	
ecologyinternational stock marketsinternationale Börsenmärkteinvestment climateInvestitionsbedingungenlabour lawsArbeitsgesetzelabour marketArbeitsgesetzelong-range goalsIangfristige Zielelow-wage countriesNiedriglohnländermass communication; mass mediaMassenkommunikation; -medienmass tourismMassenkommunikation; -medienmass tourismMassenkommunikation; -medienmass tourismMassenkommunikation; -medienmore-creditsKleinkrediteNiCO (non-governmental organisa- tion)NichtregierungsorganisationoutsourcingProduktionsverlagerungpolitical turmoilpolitischer Aufruhr, politische Turbulenzenpopulation overshoot, overpopula- tion,Überbevölkerungexcess of populationden Ausstoß von Treibhausgasen reduzierenreduce the cost of productiondie Produktionskosten senkenrise in global temperatureein weltweiter Temperaturanstiegrobotized productioncomputergesteuerte Produktion/Fertigungshort-haul flightsKurzstreckenflügesustanabilityNachhaltgkeit, Zukunftsfähigkeitsweatshopausbeuterischer BetriebtradeHandeltradeHandeltrademark policyMarkenpolitikundernutrition, malnutritionUnterernährung; Mangelernährung	interdependence of economy and	gegenseitige Abhängigkeit/Verflechtung von Ökonomie und Ökologie
investment climateInvestitionsbedingungenlabour lawsArbeitsgesetzelabour marketArbeitsgesetzelabour marketArbeitsmarktlong-range goalslangfristige Zielelow-wage countriesNiedriglohnländermass communication; mass mediaMassenkommunikation; -medienmass tourismMassenkommunikation; -medienmass tourismMassenkommunikation; -medienmass tourismMassenkommunikation; -medienmicro-creditsKleinkrediteNGO (non-governmental organisa- tion)NichtregierungsorganisationoutsourcingProduktionsverlagerungpolitical turmoilpolitischer Aufruhr, politische TurbulenzenpollutionVerschmutzungpopulation overshoot, overpopula- tion,Überbevölkerungexcess of populationden Ausstoß von Treibhausgasen reduzierenreduce greenhouse gas emissionsden Ausstoß von Treibhausgasen reduzierenreduce the cost of productiondie Produktionskosten senkenrise in global temperatureein weltweiter Temperaturanstiegrobotized productioncomputergesteuerte Produktion/Fertigungshort-haul flightsKurzstreckenflügesurface transportBodentransportsustainabilityNachhaltigkeit, Zukunftsfähigkeitsweatshopausbeuterischer BetriebtradeHandeltradeHandeltradeHandel		
labour lawsArbeitsgesetzelabour marketArbeitsmarktlong-range goalslangfristige Zielelow-wage countriesNiedriglohnländermass communication; mass mediaMassenkommunikation; -medienmass tourismMassenkommunikation; -medienmass tourismMassentourismusmelting of glaciersdas Schnelzen von Gletschernmicro-creditsKleinkrediteNGO (non-governmental organisa- tion)NichtregierungsorganisationoutsourcingProduktionsverlagerungpolitical turmoilpolitischer Aufruhr, politische TurbulenzenpollutionVerschmutzungpopulation overshoot, overpopula- tion,Überbevölkerungreduce greenhouse gas emissionsden Ausstoß von Treibhausgasen reduzierenrise in global temperatureein weltweiter Temperaturanstiegrise in global temperatureein weltweiter Temperaturanstiegsurface transportBodentransportsurface transportBodentransportsurface transportBodentransportsurface transportNachhaltigkeit, ZukunftsfähigkeitsustainabilityNachhaltigkeit, ZukunftsfähigkeitsustainabilityNachhaltigkeit, ZukunftsfähigkeitsustainabilityMarkenpolitikundernutritionUnterernährung; Mangelernährung	international stock markets	internationale Börsenmärkte
labour lawsArbeitsgesetzelabour marketArbeitsmarktlong-range goalslangfristige Zielelow-wage countriesNiedriglohnländermass communication; mass mediaMassenkommunikation; -medienmass tourismMassenkommunikation; -medienmass tourismMassentourismusmelting of glaciersdas Schmelzen von Gletschernmicro-creditsKleinkrediteNGO (non-governmental organisa- tion)NichtregierungsorganisationoutsourcingProduktionsverlagerungpolitical turmoilpolitischer Aufruhr, politische TurbulenzenpollutionVerschmutzungpopulation overshoot, overpopula- tion,Überbevölkerungexcess of populationden Ausstoß von Treibhausgasen reduzierenreduce greenhouse gas emissionsden Ausstoß von Treibhausgasen reduzierenrise in global temperatureein weltweiter Temperaturanstiegrise in global temperatureein weltweiter Temperaturanstiegsurface transportBodentransportsurface transportBodentransportsurface transportBodentransportsustainabilityNachaltigkeit, ZukunftsfähigkeitsustainabilityNachaltigkeit, ZukunftsfähigkeitsustainabilityMachaltigkeit, ZukunftsfähigkeitsustainabilityNachaltigkeit, ZukunftsfähigkeitsustainabilityNachaltigkeit, ZukunftsfähigkeitsustainabilityNachaltigkeit, ZukunftsfähigkeitsustainabilityNachaltigkeit, ZukunftsfähigkeitsustainabilityMarkenpolitik <td< td=""><td>investment climate</td><td>Investitionsbedingungen</td></td<>	investment climate	Investitionsbedingungen
long-range goalslangfristige Zielelow-wage countriesNiedriglohnländermass communication; mass mediaMassenkommunikation; -medienmass tourismMassenkommunikation; -medienmass tourismMassenkommunikation; -medienmass tourismMassentourismusmelting of glaciersdas Schmelzen von Gletschernmicro-creditsKleinkrediteNGO (non-governmental organisa- tion)NichtregierungsorganisationoutsourcingProduktionsverlagerungpolitical turmoilpolitischer Aufruhr, politische Turbulenzenpopulation overshoot, overpopula- tion,ÜberbevölkerungpovertyArmutreduce greenhouse gas emissionsden Ausstoß von Treibhausgasen reduzierenreduce greenhouse gas emissionsden Ausstoß von Treibhausgasen reduzierenrise in global temperatureein weltweiter Temperaturanstiegrobtized productioncomputergesteuerte Produktion/Fertigungshort-haul flightsKurzstreckenflügesurface transportBodentransportsupermacyVormachtstellung, ÜberlegenheitsustainabilityNachhaltigkeit, ZukunftsfähigkeitsustainabilityAuschaltigkeit, ZukunftsfähigkeitsustainabilityMarkenpolitikundernutrition, malnutritionUnterenährung; Mangelernährung	labour laws	
long-range goalslangfristige Zielelow-wage countriesNiedriglohnländermass communication; mass mediaMassenkommunikation; -medienmass tourismMassenkommunikation; -medienmass tourismMassenkommunikation; -medienmass tourismMassentourismusmelting of glaciersdas Schmelzen von Gletschernmicro-creditsKleinkrediteNGO (non-governmental organisa- tion)NichtregierungsorganisationoutsourcingProduktionsverlagerungpolitical turmoilpolitischer Aufruhr, politische Turbulenzenpopulation overshoot, overpopula- tion,ÜberbevölkerungpovertyArmutreduce greenhouse gas emissionsden Ausstoß von Treibhausgasen reduzierenreduce greenhouse gas emissionsden Ausstoß von Treibhausgasen reduzierenrise in global temperatureein weltweiter Temperaturanstiegrobtized productioncomputergesteuerte Produktion/Fertigungshort-haul flightsKurzstreckenflügesurface transportBodentransportsupermacyVormachtstellung, ÜberlegenheitsustainabilityNachhaltigkeit, ZukunftsfähigkeitsustainabilityAuschaltigkeit, ZukunftsfähigkeitsustainabilityMarkenpolitikundernutrition, malnutritionUnterenährung; Mangelernährung	labour market	Arbeitsmarkt
low-wage countriesNiedriglohnländermass communication; mass mediaMassenkommunikation; -medienmass tourismMassentourismusmelting of glaciersdas Schmelzen von Gletschernmicro-creditsKleinkrediteNGO (non-governmental organisa- tion)NichtregierungsorganisationoutsourcingProduktionsverlagerungpolitical turmoilpolitischer Aufruhr, politische TurbulenzenpolutionVerschmutzungpopulation overshoot, overpopula- tion,Überbevölkerungreduce greenhouse gas emissionsden Ausstoß von Treibhausgasen reduzierenreduce greenhouse gas emissionsden Ausstoß von Treibhausgasen reduzierenrise in global temperatureein weltweiter Temperaturanstiegrobtzized productioncomputergesteuerte Produktion/Fertigungshort-haul flightsKurzstreckenflügesurface transportBodentransportsustainabilityNachhaltigkeit, Zukunftsfähigkeitsweatshopausbeuterischer BetriebtradeHandeltrademark policyMarkenpolitikundernutrition, malnutritionUnterenrährung; Mangelernährung		
mass communication; mass mediaMassenkommunikation; -medienmass tourismMassentourismusmelting of glaciersdas Schmelzen von Gletschernmicro-creditsKleinkrediteNGO (non-governmental organisa- tion)NichtregierungsorganisationoutsourcingProduktionsverlagerungpolitical turmoilpolitischer Aufruhr, politische TurbulenzenpollutionVerschmutzungpopulation overshoot, overpopula- tion,Überbevölkerungexcess of populationden Ausstoß von Treibhausgasen reduzierenreduce greenhouse gas emissionsden Ausstoß von Treibhausgasen reduzierenrise in global temperatureein weltweiter Temperaturanstiegrobotized productionComputergesteuerte Produktion/Fertigungsurface transportBodentransportsupremacyVormachtstellung, ÜberlegenheitsustainabilityNachaltigkeit, Zukunftsfahigkeitsweatshopausbeuterischer BetriebtradeHandeltrademark policyMarkenpolitikundernutrition, malnutritionUnterernährung; Mangelernährung		Niedriglohnländer
mass tourismMassentourismusmelting of glaciersdas Schmelzen von Gletschernmicro-creditsKleinkrediteNGO (non-governmental organisa- tion)NichregierungsorganisationoutsourcingProduktionsverlagerungpolitical turmoilpolitischer Aufruhr, politische TurbulenzenpollutionVerschmutzungpopulation overshoot, overpopula- tion,Überbevölkerungexcess of populationpovertyArmutreduce greenhouse gas emissionsden Ausstoß von Treibhausgasen reduzierenrise in global temperatureein weltweiter Temperaturanstiegsurface transportBodentransportsurger transportBodentransportsupremacyVormachtstellung, ÜberlegenheitsupremacyNachaltigkeit, Zukunftsfähigkeitsweatshopausbuetrischer BetriebtradeHandeltrademark policyMarkenpolitikundernutrition, malnutritionUnterernährung; Mangelenährung		
melting of glaciersdas Schmelzen von Gletschernmicro-creditsKleinkrediteNGO (non-governmental organisa- tion)NichtregierungsorganisationoutsourcingProduktionsverlagerung political turmoilpolitical turmoilpolitischer Aufruhr, politische Turbulenzenpopulation overshoot, overpopula- tion,Überbevölkerungexcess of populationArmutpovertyArmutreduce greenhouse gas emissionsden Ausstoß von Treibhausgasen reduzierenrise in global temperatureein weltweiter Temperaturanstiegrobotized productioncomputergesteuerte Produktion/Fertigungsurface transportBodentransportsupremacyVormachtstellung, Überlegenheitsweatshopausbuetrischer BetriebtradeHandeltradeHandeltradeMarkenpolitikundernutrition, malnutritionUnterernährung; Mangelernährung		
micro-creditsKleinkrediteNGO (non-governmental organisa- tion)NichtregierungsorganisationoutsourcingProduktionsverlagerung political turmoilpolitical turmoilProduktionsverlagerung politische TurbulenzenpollutionVerschmutzungpopulation overshoot, overpopula- tion,Überbevölkerungexcess of populationpovertyArmutreduce greenhouse gas emissionsden Ausstoß von Treibhausgasen reduzierenrise in global temperatureein weltweiter Temperaturanstiegrobotized productioncomputergesteuerte Produktion/Fertigungshort-haul flightsKurzstreckenflügesurface transportBodentransportsupremacyVormachtstellung, Überlegenheitsweatshopausbeuterischer BetriebtradeHandeltradeHandeltradeMarkenpolitikundernutrition, malnutritionUnterernährung; Mangelernährung		
NGO (non-governmental organisa- tion)NichtregierungsorganisationoutsourcingProduktionsverlagerungpolitical turmoilpolitischer Aufruhr, politische TurbulenzenpollutionVerschmutzungpopulation overshoot, overpopula- tion,Überbevölkerungexcess of populationArmutpovertyArmutreduce greenhouse gas emissionsden Ausstoß von Treibhausgasen reduzierenrise in global temperatureein weltweiter Temperaturanstiegrobotized productioncomputergesteuerte Produktion/Fertigungshort-haul flightsKurzstreckenflügesurface transportBodentransportsupremacyVormachtstellung, Überlegenheitsweatshopausbeuterischer BetriebtradeHandeltradeHandelundernutrition, malnutritionUnterernährung; Mangelernährung		
tion)Oregin and the second		
outsourcingProduktionsverlagerungpolitical turmoilpolitischer Aufruhr, politische TurbulenzenpollutionVerschmutzungpopulation overshoot, overpopula- tion,Überbevölkerungexcess of populationpovertyArmutreduce greenhouse gas emissionsden Ausstoß von Treibhausgasen reduzierenrise in global temperatureein weltweiter Temperaturanstiegrobotized productioncomputergesteuerte Produktion/Fertigungshort-haul flightsKurzstreckenflügesurface transportBodentransportsupremacyVormachtstellung, Überlegenheitsweatshopausbeuterischer BetriebtradeHandeltradeHandeltrademark policyMarkenpolitikundernutrition, malnutritionUnterernährung; Mangelernährung		nient ogier ungeer gameuten
political turmoilpolitischer Aufruhr, politische TurbulenzenpollutionVerschmutzungpopulation overshoot, overpopula- tion,Überbevölkerungexcess of populationpovertyArmutreduce greenhouse gas emissionsden Ausstoß von Treibhausgasen reduzierenrise in global temperatureein weltweiter Temperaturanstiegrobotized productioncomputergesteuerte Produktion/Fertigungshort-haul flightsKurzstreckenflügesurface transportBodentransportsupremacyVormachtstellung, Überlegenheitsweatshopausbeuterischer BetriebtradeHandeltradeHandeltrademark policyMarkenpolitikundernutrition, malnutritionUnterernährung; Mangelernährung		Produktionsverlagerung
pollutionVerschmutzungpopulation overshoot, overpopula- tion,Überbevölkerungexcess of populationpovertyArmutreduce greenhouse gas emissionsden Ausstoß von Treibhausgasen reduzierenrise in global temperatureein weltweiter Temperaturanstiegrobotized productioncomputergesteuerte Produktion/Fertigungshort-haul flightsKurzstreckenflügesurface transportBodentransportsupremacyVormachtstellung, Überlegenheitsweatshopausbeuterischer BetriebtradeHandeltradeHandelundernutrition, malnutritionUnterernährung; Mangelernährung		
population overshoot, overpopula- tion,Überbevölkerungexcess of populationpovertyArmutreduce greenhouse gas emissionsden Ausstoß von Treibhausgasen reduzierenreduce the cost of productiondie Produktionskosten senkenrise in global temperatureein weltweiter Temperaturanstiegrobotized productioncomputergesteuerte Produktion/Fertigungshort-haul flightsKurzstreckenflügesurface transportBodentransportsupremacyVormachtstellung, Überlegenheitsweatshopausbeuterischer BetriebtradeHandeltradeHandelundernutrition, malnutritionUnterernährung; Mangelernährung		
tion,ArmutpovertyArmutreduce greenhouse gas emissionsden Ausstoß von Treibhausgasen reduzierenreduce the cost of productiondie Produktionskosten senkenrise in global temperatureein weltweiter Temperaturanstiegrobotized productioncomputergesteuerte Produktion/Fertigungshort-haul flightsKurzstreckenflügesurface transportBodentransportsupremacyVormachtstellung, Überlegenheitsweatshopausbeuterischer BetriebtradeHandeltradeUndernutritionundernutrition, malnutritionUnterernährung; Mangelernährung		
excess of population Armut poverty Armut reduce greenhouse gas emissions den Ausstoß von Treibhausgasen reduzieren reduce the cost of production die Produktionskosten senken rise in global temperature ein weltweiter Temperaturanstieg robotized production computergesteuerte Produktion/Fertigung short-haul flights Kurzstreckenflüge surface transport Bodentransport supremacy Vormachtstellung, Überlegenheit sweatshop ausbeuterischer Betrieb trade Handel trademark policy Markenpolitik undernutrition, malnutrition Unterernährung; Mangelernährung		oberbevolkerung
poverty Armut reduce greenhouse gas emissions den Ausstoß von Treibhausgasen reduzieren reduce the cost of production die Produktionskosten senken rise in global temperature ein weltweiter Temperaturanstieg robotized production computergesteuerte Produktion/Fertigung short-haul flights Kurzstreckenflüge surface transport Bodentransport supremacy Vormachtstellung, Überlegenheit sweatshop ausbeuterischer Betrieb trade Handel trademark policy Markenpolitik undernutrition, malnutrition Unterernährung; Mangelernährung		
reduce greenhouse gas emissionsden Ausstoß von Treibhausgasen reduzierenreduce the cost of productiondie Produktionskosten senkenrise in global temperatureein weltweiter Temperaturanstiegrobotized productioncomputergesteuerte Produktion/Fertigungshort-haul flightsKurzstreckenflügesurface transportBodentransportsupremacyVormachtstellung, Überlegenheitsweatshopausbeuterischer BetriebtradeHandeltradeMarkenpolitikundernutrition, malnutritionUnterernährung; Mangelernährung		Armut
reduce the cost of productiondie Produktionskosten senkenrise in global temperatureein weltweiter Temperaturanstiegrobotized productioncomputergesteuerte Produktion/Fertigungshort-haul flightsKurzstreckenflügesurface transportBodentransportsupremacyVormachtstellung, Überlegenheitsweatshopausbeuterischer BetriebtradeHandeltrademark policyMarkenpolitikundernutrition, malnutritionUnterernährung; Mangelernährung		
rise in global temperatureein weltweiter Temperaturanstiegrobotized productioncomputergesteuerte Produktion/Fertigungshort-haul flightsKurzstreckenflügesurface transportBodentransportsupremacyVormachtstellung, ÜberlegenheitsustainabilityNachhaltigkeit, Zukunftsfähigkeitsweatshopausbeuterischer BetriebtradeHandeltrademark policyMarkenpolitikundernutrition, malnutritionUnterernährung; Mangelernährung		
robotized productioncomputergesteuerte Produktion/Fertigungshort-haul flightsKurzstreckenflügesurface transportBodentransportsupremacyVormachtstellung, ÜberlegenheitsustainabilityNachhaltigkeit, Zukunftsfähigkeitsweatshopausbeuterischer BetriebtradeHandeltrademark policyMarkenpolitikundernutrition, malnutritionUnterernährung; Mangelernährung		
short-haul flights Kurzstreckenflüge surface transport Bodentransport supremacy Vormachtstellung, Überlegenheit sustainability Nachhaltigkeit, Zukunftsfähigkeit sweatshop ausbeuterischer Betrieb trade Handel trademark policy Markenpolitik undernutrition, malnutrition Unterernährung; Mangelernährung		
surface transport Bodentransport supremacy Vormachtstellung, Überlegenheit sustainability Nachhaltigkeit, Zukunftsfähigkeit sweatshop ausbeuterischer Betrieb trade Handel trademark policy Markenpolitik undernutrition, malnutrition Unterernährung; Mangelernährung		
supremacyVormachtstellung, ÜberlegenheitsustainabilityNachhaltigkeit, Zukunftsfähigkeitsweatshopausbeuterischer BetriebtradeHandeltrademark policyMarkenpolitikundernutrition, malnutritionUnterernährung; Mangelernährung		
sustainabilityNachhaltigkeit, Zukunftsfähigkeitsweatshopausbeuterischer BetriebtradeHandeltrademark policyMarkenpolitikundernutrition, malnutritionUnterernährung; Mangelernährung		
sweatshop ausbeuterischer Betrieb trade Handel trademark policy Markenpolitik undernutrition, malnutrition Unterernährung; Mangelernährung		
trade Handel trademark policy Markenpolitik undernutrition, malnutrition Unterernährung; Mangelernährung		
trademark policy Markenpolitik undernutrition, malnutrition Unterernährung; Mangelernährung		
undernutrition, malnutrition Unterernährung; Mangelernährung		
	1 2	
unemployment Arbeitslosigkeit	,	Unterernährung; Mangelernährung
	unemployment	Arbeitslosigkeit



STÄDTISCHES GYMNASIUM LAURENTIANUM

Manual 21

NOTES ON VOCAB – QUALIFYING STAGE

working conditions	Arbeitsbedingungen
	Aibeitsbeuliguigeli
UTOPIA AND DYSTOPIA	
anti-individualist -	anti-individualistisch
anti-utopian	anti-utopisch
authoritarian	autoritär
brainwashing; to brainwash	Gehirnwäsche (durchführen)
dissent	abweichende Meinung haben
dissenter	Andersdenkender
dystopia	Anti-Utopie, Dystopie
extrapolation	Übertragung, Ableitung
fiction	Dichtung, erzählende Literatur
fictitious	fiktiv, erfunden
fictional	literarisch
future	Zukunft, zukünftig
futuristic	futuristisch
hierarchy	Hierarchie
imaginary	erfunden
individualist	Individualist, individualistisch
indoctrination	Indoktrination/Indoktrinierung
oppression	Unterdrückung
restriction	Einschränkung
surveillance	Überwachung
totalitarian	totalitär
utopia	Utopie
SCIENCE AND ETHICS	
achievement of scientists	Errungenschaft/Leistung der Wissenschaftler
artificial insemination	künstliche Befruchtung
development	Entwicklung
DNA (deoxyribonucleic acid)	DNA/DNS
double helix (DNA)	Doppelhelix, DNA
error rate	Fehlerrate
genetic disorders genetic engineering	genetische Funktionsstörung
	Gentechnik, Genmanipulation
genetic fingerprint	genetischer Fingerabdruck
genetic fingerprint genetic make-up, genetic constitu- tion	genetischer Fingerabdruck Erbgut
genetic fingerprint genetic make-up, genetic constitu- tion genetic modification (CM)	genetischer Fingerabdruck Erbgut genetische Veränderung
genetic fingerprint genetic make-up, genetic constitu- tion	genetischer Fingerabdruck Erbgut
genetic fingerprint genetic make-up, genetic constitu- tion genetic modification (CM) heredity, inheritance	genetischer Fingerabdruck Erbgut genetische Veränderung Vererbung
genetic fingerprint genetic make-up, genetic constitu- tion genetic modification (CM) heredity, inheritance inherit insecticide	genetischer Fingerabdruck Erbgut genetische Veränderung Vererbung erben Insektizid
genetic fingerprint genetic make-up, genetic constitu- tion genetic modification (CM) heredity, inheritance inherit insecticide in-vitro fertilisation	genetischer Fingerabdruck Erbgut genetische Veränderung Vererbung erben Insektizid In-vitro-Befruchtung
genetic fingerprint genetic make-up, genetic constitu- tion genetic modification (CM) heredity, inheritance inherit insecticide	genetischer Fingerabdruck Erbgut genetische Veränderung Vererbung erben Insektizid In-vitro-Befruchtung Labor
genetic fingerprint genetic make-up, genetic constitu- tion genetic modification (CM) heredity, inheritance inherit insecticide in-vitro fertilisation laboratory	genetischer Fingerabdruck Erbgut genetische Veränderung Vererbung erben Insektizid In-vitro-Befruchtung
genetic fingerprint genetic make-up, genetic constitu- tion genetic modification (CM) heredity, inheritance inherit insecticide in-vitro fertilisation laboratory to modify	genetischer Fingerabdruck Erbgut genetische Veränderung Vererbung erben Insektizid In-vitro-Befruchtung Labor modifizieren, verändern
genetic fingerprint genetic make-up, genetic constitu- tion genetic modification (CM) heredity, inheritance inherit insecticide in-vitro fertilisation laboratory to modify modification molecule	genetischer Fingerabdruck Erbgut genetische Veränderung Vererbung erben Insektizid In-vitro-Befruchtung Labor modifizieren, verändern Modifizierung Molekül
genetic fingerprint genetic make-up, genetic constitu- tion genetic modification (CM) heredity, inheritance inherit insecticide in-vitro fertilisation laboratory to modify modification molecule to mutate	genetischer Fingerabdruck Erbgut genetische Veränderung Vererbung erben Insektizid In-vitro-Befruchtung Labor modifizieren, verändern Modifizierung
genetic fingerprint genetic make-up, genetic constitu- tion genetic modification (CM) heredity, inheritance inherit insecticide in-vitro fertilisation laboratory to modify modification molecule to mutate mutation	genetischer Fingerabdruck Erbgut genetische Veränderung Vererbung erben Insektizid In-vitro-Befruchtung Labor modifizieren, verändern Modifizierung Molekül mutieren
genetic fingerprint genetic make-up, genetic constitu- tion genetic modification (CM) heredity, inheritance inherit insecticide in-vitro fertilisation laboratory to modify modification molecule to mutate mutation non-polluting	genetischer Fingerabdruck Erbgut genetische Veränderung Vererbung erben Insektizid In-vitro-Befruchtung Labor modifizieren, verändern Modifizierung Molekül mutieren Mutation umweltfreundlich
genetic fingerprint genetic make-up, genetic constitu- tion genetic modification (CM) heredity, inheritance inherit insecticide in-vitro fertilisation laboratory to modify modification molecule to mutate mutation non-polluting organ donor	genetischer Fingerabdruck Erbgut genetische Veränderung Vererbung erben Insektizid In-vitro-Befruchtung Labor modifizieren, verändern Modifizierung Molekül mutieren Mutation umweltfreundlich Organspender
genetic fingerprint genetic make-up, genetic constitu- tion genetic modification (CM) heredity, inheritance inherit insecticide in-vitro fertilisation laboratory to modify modification molecule to mutate mutation non-polluting organ donor to pass on	genetischer Fingerabdruck Erbgut genetische Veränderung Vererbung erben Insektizid In-vitro-Befruchtung Labor modifizieren, verändern Modifizierung Molekül mutieren Mutation umweltfreundlich Organspender vererben
genetic fingerprint genetic make-up, genetic constitu- tion genetic modification (CM) heredity, inheritance inherit insecticide in-vitro fertilisation laboratory to modify modification molecule to mutate mutation non-polluting organ donor to pass on pesticide	genetischer Fingerabdruck Erbgut genetische Veränderung Vererbung erben Insektizid In-vitro-Befruchtung Labor modifizieren, verändern Modifizierung Molekül mutieren Mutation umweltfreundlich Organspender vererben Unkrautvernichtungsmittel, Pestizid
genetic fingerprint genetic make-up, genetic constitu- tion genetic modification (CM) heredity, inheritance inherit insecticide in-vitro fertilisation laboratory to modify modification molecule to mutate mutation non-polluting organ donor to pass on pesticide progress (no article, no plural)	genetischer Fingerabdruck Erbgut genetische Veränderung Vererbung erben Insektizid In-vitro-Befruchtung Labor modifizieren, verändern Modifizierung Molekül mutieren Mutation umweltfreundlich Organspender vererben Unkrautvernichtungsmittel, Pestizid Fortschritt
genetic fingerprint genetic constitu- tion genetic modification (CM) heredity, inheritance inherit insecticide in-vitro fertilisation laboratory to modify modification molecule to mutate mutation non-polluting organ donor to pass on pesticide progress (no article, no plural) reproductive cloning	genetischer Fingerabdruck Erbgut genetische Veränderung Vererbung erben Insektizid In-vitro-Befruchtung Labor modifizieren, verändern Modifizierung Molekül mutieren Mutation umweltfreundlich Organspender vererben Unkrautvernichtungsmittel, Pestizid Fortschritt Klonen von Menschen
genetic fingerprint genetic make-up, genetic constitu- tion genetic modification (CM) heredity, inheritance inherit insecticide in-vitro fertilisation laboratory to modify modification molecule to mutate mutation non-polluting organ donor to pass on pesticide progress (no article, no plural)	genetischer Fingerabdruck Erbgut genetische Veränderung Vererbung erben Insektizid In-vitro-Befruchtung Labor modifizieren, verändern Modifizierung Molekül mutieren Mutation umweltfreundlich Organspender vererben Unkrautvernichtungsmittel, Pestizid Fortschritt

ENGLISH DEPARTMENT





Fachschaft Englisch Manual 21

NOTES ON VOCAB - QUALIFYING STAGE

resistance	Resistenz
stem cell	Stammzelle
technology	Technologie, Technik
test-tube baby	Retortenbaby
therapeutic cloning	therapeutisches Klonen
transgenic	transgen (genetisch verändert)
SHAKESPEARE	
actor	Schauspieler
actress (not in Elizabethan times)	Schauspielerin
aside	beiseite gesprochener Text
blank verse	Blankvers
play	Schauspiel, Drama
drama	Drama
tragedy	Tragödie
comedy	Komödie
history	Historiendrama
romance	Romanze
Elizabethan age/era	elisabethanisches Zeitalter
enter	tritt auf (Regieanweisung)
exit; exeunt	geht ab; gehen ab
fatal flaw	verhängnisvolle Schwäche (des Tragödienhelden)
groundlings	stehende Zuschauer im elisabethanischen Theater
hero	Held
heroine	Heldin
Jacobean	aus der Zeit James 1.
Master of the Revels	für Theater zuständiger Beamter
medieval	mittelalterlich
the Middle Ages	Mittelalter
performance	Vorstellung
to perform	vorführen
playhouse	Theater
playing company troupe	Theatertruppe
The Lord Chamberlain's Men; The	(berühmte Truppen der Shakespeare-Zeit)
Admiral's Men	
playwright; dramatist	Bühnenautor
Renaissance	Renaissance
scenery	Kulisse
soliloquy	Monolog/Selbstgespräch
stage	Bühne
stage props	Requisiten
wit	Geist, Witz

BASIC INFORMATION ON CLASS TOPICS QUALIFYING STAGE

1. THE DIGITAL AGE

Spot on facts

Digital presence

"Everything you do now ends up in your permanent record. The best plan is to overload Google with good stuff and to always act as if you're on candid camera, because you are!" Seth Godin, US author, businessman and public speaker

Social media allow us to post continual updates about our daily lives, as well as photos and videos to document our every move. At the same time, our families and 'friends' can comment on these posts or os visuals. Never before has so much data been publicly available on individuals and their lives – for many people their digital presence is almost as important as their physical one.

Every time you upload a photo or video, post a comment, create or update a social media profile, you are adding to your digital presence. But it is not just about what *you* do. Whenever friends or family post anything that mentions you, this also contributes to your digital presence. And it is permanent – it is still there when you die, unless you lay down plans to have it removed once you are dead. But more importantly, if you don't guard your privacy, anyone can access it: your parents, teachers, future university tutors or employers.

Digital footprint

Your 'digital footprint' refers to the trail you leave in cyberspace. No matter whether you are sending an e-mail, using a social networking site, posting a comment, shopping online or using a search os engine, you leave a trail behind. Although you cannot physically see it, it follows you all your life. The moment a device accesses the internet, a trail is opened and then stored on your own computer and often also on the sites you visit. Unlike paper 10 trails, which can generally be destroyed, it is nearly impossible to eliminate your digital trail or 'digital footprint'. This is because even if you delete all traces from your own PC or mobile device, the data is still

probably somewhere in cyberspace. Technology

15 corporations have been routinely collecting, storing,

and sharing this data for years. And governments

and security agencies have also been caught using this information to monitor our movements and behaviour.

In today's 24/7 digital world, there are growing 20 concerns about our lack of online privacy. According to one 2013 survey, 9 out of 10 American adults believe they have less privacy than previous generations. But US teens are also concerned: In a 2013 Washington Post-Pew Research poll, 45% 25 of American teens said that they did not want the federal government monitoring their online lives. Many people are calling for new laws on how personal information is collected and stored to stop children being forced to forfeit their privacy before 30 they fully understand what privacy is and why it is important.

²¹ concern [BE: kən'ss:n, AE: -'ss:rn] worry
 ²⁵ poll survey

By the age of two, more than 90% of Americans children have an online history.

07 device [dɪ'vaɪs] Gerät

12 trace [tress] mark or sign left by sth

Only **9%** of US teens who use social media are "very concerned" about **third parties accessing their data.***

By the age of five, more than **50%** of American children regularly **interact** with a computer or tablet device.

85% of US teens

every day.

use smartphones, social

media and the internet

an By the age of seven or ildren eight, many US kids regularly h a play video games. 59% of US teens who use social media have deleted or edited something that they posted in the past.*

45 % of US teens who use social media have removed their names from photos that have been tagged to identify them.* an entir

31% of US teens who use social media **have deactivated** or **deleted an entire account.***

Source: Common Sense Media (2012) / Pew Research Internet Project (2013)

1. THE DIGITAL AGE

Tracking consumers

Have you ever wondered why a product you have been looking at on the internet seems to be following you around the web? Targeted ads are linked to our browsing history, to our digital

os footprint. Many websites use cookies to track what visitors to the site do. This means they can create a user profile for each visitor. The websites are then able to use this information to market products or services to specific people. In other cases, they sell user profiles to third parties to enable them to target

advertising at consumers based on their profile.

By disabling browser cookies, consumers are able to have greater control over their movements. However, this has led to advertisers using increasingly sophisticated methods to track consumer behaviour, especially across different devices, as people now use a number of devices to access the internet. Although many people prefer customised ads to

The digital age

random ones, surveys show that the majority of web users are concerned about losing control of their 20 online privacy and want to have the right to control the information collected about them.

1 COMPREHENSION

a) Summarise in your own words what is meant by the terms 'digital presence' and 'digital footprint'.
 b) Point out how a person's digital footprint influences what advertising that person might see online.

2 AA LANGUAGE

Collect words and expressions that are connected with 'digital footprint' and create a word cloud. Compare your word clouds with those of other pairs.

3 EVALUATION $\rightarrow \triangle 106/2$

- a) Read the quotation by Seth Godin. Comment on what he is saying. To what extent do you agree with him?
- b) 冷冷 Look at the statistics on page 32. Do any of the statistics surprise you? Discuss your ideas with a partner.

4 WORKING WITH STATISTICS → S14

a) 유유 Comment on the infographic about what teens share on social media in the US. How would you have answered the question? Discuss your ideas with a partner.



Survey among 802 US teens aged 12–17, Pew Internet Parent / Teen Privacy Survey (2012)

b) 冷冷冷 Mediation: On the internet find the most recent 'JIM-Studie' about German teens. Skim through it and, in small groups, choose five points that you think would be of interest to US teens. Think about how you can present these results in an interesting way for your target audience (as a presentation, as an infographic, as a set of statistics). Once you have completed your presentation, show it to the rest of the class and discuss which of the different approaches you find the most effective.

5 සිසිස් CREATIVE TASK: DESIGNING A POSTER → △ 106/3

What advice would you give to others about how to create a positive digital presence? Discuss your ideas in small groups and then design a poster to present the ideas as attractively as possible. Arrange a gallery walk and comment on one another's posters.

33

BASIC INFORMATION ON CLASS TOPICS TRANSITION PHASE

2. THINK GLOBALLY, ACT LOCALLY

Spot on facts

Global village

Today we live in a so-called 'global village', a term coined in 1962 by Marshall McLuhan, a Canadian professor who predicted the web almost thirty years before it was invented. Easy and affordable travel

⁰⁵ means that people can move around more freely and spread information and ideas, as well as learning from one another. In addition, the mass media and electronic communications have enabled people to connect all over the world. Some people argue that this globalisation has led to improved international 10 trade and enabled the spread of democracy. Yet at the same time, others say that it has primarily benefited western countries. Some are worried about a loss of individual identity as countries become more westernised. However, one thing is for sure: As 15 globalisation and technology continue to advance, we all have to be aware of the responsibilities that come with living in a global village.

13 to benefit sb/sth to give sb/sth an advantage

¹¹ trade [treɪd] Handel





The fact that we are now so interconnected means that we are much more aware of what is going on in different parts of the world. Some global problems have a direct impact on all of our lives, whether we

- os are rich or poor. Others affect certain parts of society or developing countries. Some of the most pressing global issues in the 21st century are: climate change, poverty, the growing population, how our food is produced, human rights, lack of access to drinking
- 10 water and basic sanitation, the situation of refugees and the easy spread of pandemics.

sanitation (no pl) sanitäre Anlagen
 refugee [refjʊ'dʒiː] person who must leave his/her country

Did you know?

- 870 million people, or 1 in 8 of the world's population, were chronically undernourished in 2010–2012.
- More than one billion people live on less than \$1 per day; 2.7 billion live on less than \$2 per day.
 More than 2.6 billion people do not have basic
- More than 2.6 billion people do not have basic sanitation.
- Around the world 114 million children do not get 20 a basic education.

Source: United Nations Development Programme (2013)

¹¹ pandemic disease that affects people over a large area ¹⁴ undernourished [,ʌndə'nʌrɪʃt] not getting enough food

1 COMPREHENSION

List the pros and cons of living in a 'global village'.

2 AA WORKING WITH VISUALS → S12

Describe the photos above and say which of the global issues each one represents. Then together collect ideas on how you would visualise the other global issues mentioned in the text.

3 WORKING WITH STATISTICS → S14

Look at the facts in 'Did you know?' above. Which statistic do you find the most surprising?

4 EVALUATION \rightarrow S20 $\rightarrow \triangle$ 111/5

Comment on the following quotation by Bill Gates, the founder of Microsoft: "The internet is becoming the town square of the global village of tomorrow."

BASIC INFORMATION ON CLASS TOPICS TRANSITION PHASE 2. THINK GLOBALLY, ACT LOCALLY

Our ecological footprint

Our ecological footprint is not only about what we buy and use but also what we do with the products (and packaging) once we have finished with them. Whether it is fashion, electronics or other goods, os we are continually being told that we 'need' the latest product. This consumer culture is draining the planet's resources and at the same time, the discarded products and their packaging are polluting our oceans and environment. The only way to stop

 this is to lead a more sustainable lifestyle, i.e. to reduce the number of products we buy (and throw away), reuse what we already have and recycle
 things when we no longer need them. "We produce 40 tonnes of waste to make a tonne of products, and 98 per cent of these products are dumped within just six months of purchase. In a world covered in people and products, it must be questioned: What is all this 'meaningful stuff' really for, and why does it transform into 'meaningless rubbish' so quickly?"

Think globally, act locally

⁶⁶ to drain sth here: to use too much of sth
 ⁷⁷ resource [r!z:s:] (usually pl.) Ressource, Rohstoff
 ⁶⁸ to pollute to make air water, soil etc. dirty
 ¹⁰ sustainable nachhaltia

What is fairtrade?

Increasingly, when we walk around a supermarket, we are bombarded with labels: organic, sustainable, natural, fairtrade. But it is often difficult to know what is really behind each of them. Not all of them of are regulated, but 'fairtrade' products are. Though no system is 100% perfect, fairtrade products aim to offer the producers a better deal – a fair price for their product. In turn, they are supposed to pay their workers fair wages and to provide them with decent

⁰⁹ wage the money you earn ⁰⁹ decent ['di:snt] socially acceptable working conditions. Not only are the producers 10 offered a fair price, but also an additional sum of money is put into a communal fund for workers and farmers so that they can improve their social, economic and environmental conditions. By buying fairtrade products, consumers are also able to ensure 15 that no-one has been exploited in the process. Today there are around 1.24 million fairtrade farmers and workers around the world.

¹² communal fund [fʌnd] kommunaler Fonds
 ¹⁶ to exploit sb jmdn. ausbeuten

5 COMPREHENSION

a) Briefly point out what the term 'ecological footprint' means. Why is our current lifestyle not sustainable?
b) Using your own words, outline how fairtrade works.

6 AA LANGUAGE

Collect words and expressions in the two texts that are connected with 'trade' and arrange them in a mind map. Add any others you can think of that fit. Compare your mind map with that of your partner.

7 SPEAKING: DISCUSSION → S31

- a) ARA Make a list of all the products that you have bought in the past month. Which ones had plastic packaging? Compare your findings in small groups. What can we do to reduce the amount of packaging we throw away each year? Discuss your ideas.
- b) To what extent do you agree with what Professor Chapman is saying? Give reasons for your answers.

8 AA DOING RESEARCH → \$37

Identify the logos that you know and explain what you think each one stands for. Choose one of the logos and find out more about the organisation behind it. Compare your findings. Discuss to what extent the organisations all share a common aim.



Eco Fashion

Focus on Facts

87

The environmental impact of the clothing industry

- Polyester, the most widely-used manufactured fibre, is made from petroleum. The demand for manmade fibres, especially polyester, has nearly doubled in the last 15 years. The manufacturing of polyester and other synthetic fabrics is an energy-intensive process that needs very large amounts of crude oil and releases emissions, all of which can cause cancer or serious lung diseases.
- Cotton, one of the most popular all-round fibres used in clothing manufacture, also produces a significant environmental footprint. One cupful of pesticides and fertilisers is used in the production of one conventional T-shirt.
- In the European Union, the REACH (Registration, Evaluation, Authorisation and Restriction of Chemicals) regulations enacted¹ June, 2007 require clothing manufacturers and importers to identify and quantify the chemicals used in their products.

The impact of (not) recycling textiles

- It is estimated that more than one million tonnes of textiles are thrown away every year.
- Textiles present particular problems in landfill. Synthetic or man-made fibres do not decompose, while woollen garments produce methane gas while decomposing, which contributes to global warming. If everyone in the UK bought one reclaimed woollen garment each year, it would save an average of 371 million gallons of water and 480 tonnes of chemical dyestuffs.
- Over 70 per cent of the world's population use second-hand clothes.
- Recycling cotton saves 20,000 litres of water per kilogram of cotton, as it is water-intensive crop.

"Fast" and "slow" fashion

- Clothing produced at increasingly lower prices makes many consumers consider this clothing to be
 disposable. Some call it "fast fashion", the clothing equivalent² of fast food. Fast fashion provides
 the marketplace with affordable apparel³ aimed mostly at young women. Fueling the demand are
 fashion magazines that help create the desire for new "must-haves" for each season. Disposable
 couture appears in shopping malls in America and Europe at very low prices.
- Women in the West tend to buy much more clothing and discard it more often than men; therefore, the world supply of used women's clothing is at least seven times that of men's.
- Eco-fashions are often called "slow fashion" because it is made to last and is "trans-seasonal"⁴.

Ethical fashion/eco fashion

 Eco fashion is defined as "identifying the general environmental performance⁵ of a product within a product group based on its whole life-cycle in key environmental measures and to support sustainable consumption⁶ patterns."



- One approach has been the sustainably-grown cotton, hemp, bamboo, and other fibres that require less pesticides, irrigation, and other inputs.
- Sales of organic cotton women's clothing have grown by 33%. However, organic cotton represents only 0.03% of worldwide cotton production.
- Patagonia, a major retailer⁷ in casual wear⁸, has been selling fleece clothing made from post-consumer⁹ plastic soda bottles since 1993. The company estimates that between 1993 and 2006 it saved 86 million soda bottles from ending up in the landfill.
 Data from: Waste Couture The environmental impact of the clothing industry, November 9, 2007

¹ to enact sth. to pass a law – ² equivalent sth. that is equal in meaning and importance – ³ apparel clothing when it is being sold in shops – ⁴ trans-seasonal fashion fashion that people wear for more than one season – ⁵ performance here: the efficiency with which sth. fulfills its intended purpose – ⁶ consumption the act of using energy/food, etc. – ⁷ retailer a business that sells goods to the public – ⁸ casual wear *Freizeitbekleidung* – ⁹ post- ... after

ENGLISH DEPARTMENT

BASIC INFORMATION ON CLASS TOPICS TRANSITION PHASE 2. THINK GLOBALLY, ACT LOCALLY

BASIC INFORMATION ON CLASS TOPICS TRANSITION PHASE

3. CROSSING BORDERS

Spot on facts

Crossing borders

Environmental and Ecological Movements

Focus on Facts

99

Ecological movements have a long tradition that was pioneered by German and French scientists of the 17th and 18th centuries, and that back then was known as the *Conservation Movement*. Among others, the German scientist Alexander von Humboldt developed an early climate change theory in order to keep the delicate balance or "household" of nature.

In the 19th century, the American Conservation Movement began to consider the deep relationship between man and nature. The most notable literary figures proved to be Henry David Thoreaux and Ralph Waldo Emerson, both of whom contributed most influential literary works to the early ecological movement. As a consequence, the first American National Parks were founded in order to preserve "America's natural wonders" (1872 Yellowstone National Park, 1890 Yosemite National Park). The 20th century brought new concerns, such as nuclear weapons and chemical pesticides, acid rain, ozone depletion and deforestation, and thus a new ecological movement was born. The Rio de Janeiro Earth Summit in 1992 replaced older ideologies with its discussion about sustainable development and sustainability.

The beginning of the 21st century with its larger-scale global issues such as climate change, global warming and the extinction of species has led to a further branching out of the ecology movement to different means of effecting change, for example:

Organization	Founders, headquarters (HQ), budget	Goals, concerns
	Intergovernmental organization	tions
European Environment Agency (EEA)	est. 1994, HQ in Copenhagen, 32 members, annual budget 2 mio euros	land use, air pollution, climate change
United Nations Environ- ment Programme (UNEP)	est. 1972, headquarters in Nairobi, Kenya, works in conjunction with international NGOs	atmosphere, marine and terrestrial ecosystems, developing guidelines and treaties, prevention of air pollution and contamination of waterways
	International non-governmental organi	zations (NGOs)
Green Cross International (GCI)	est. in 1993, launched by Mikhail Gorbachev, represented in 30 nations worldwide, headquarters in Geneva, Switzerland	addressing the environmental conse- quences of wars and conflicts; promoting ethics and behaviour changes
Greenpeace GREENPEACE	est. 1971, headquarters in Amster- dam, The Netherlands, has an esti- mated 3 million financial supporters globally	utilizing direct action; lobbying and research; focus on: anti-nuclear protest, whaling, bottom trawling, global warming, old growth; new codes of social, environ- mental and political behaviour
World Wide Fund For Nature (WWF)	est. 1961 (former World Wildlife Fund), headquarters in Gland, Swit- zerland, over 5 million supporters worldwide	Focus: biodiversity, forests, freshwater ecosystems, oceans, pollution, coasts, endangered species, climate change, conservation
	National non-governmental organiza	tions (NGOs)
Bund für Umwelt- und Naturschutz Deutschland (BUND)	est. 1975, headquarters in Berlin, 5.6 million euros in donations, 390,000 active members	sustainable development, peace, water, forests, waste, energy, gene technology
Sea Shepherd	est. 1981, headquarters in USA and Australia	environmentalism, marine conservation, direct action against whaling, hunting seals/dolphins

Going abroad

Today there are different opportunities available to young people who are interested in going abroad. Some students take part in a school exchange, visiting a country with their classmates for a week

os or two to learn the language and to get a firsthand insight into the culture. Others go to live in a different country for several months, a semester or even a year, attending school there and living with a host family. This means that they can immerse

10 themselves in the language and are able to become more fluent. In addition they get to experience what life is really like in a different culture.

Others take a gap year after finishing school and travel extensively in one or more countries.

15 Backpacking is a popular option, although people often have to work to pay their way. Others take part in a volunteer programme and help communities in different countries. As they also often live with a host family, they are able to experience the local culture

20 directly. Many people who have done so say this is a very rewarding experience as they feel that they are able to give something back while they are travelling.



Sometimes young people are able to get a placement or work experience with a company in another country, although competition is tough. 25 And in today's connected world, there are countless other possibilities of learning about other cultures and countries via the internet.

09 to immerse yourself in sth sich in etw. vertiefen

Why go abroad?

⁰⁶ insight Einblick

"Perhaps travel cannot prevent bigotry, but by demonstrating that all peoples cry, laugh, eat, worry and die, it can introduce the idea that if we try and understand each other, we may even become friends."

Maya Angelou (1928–2014), American author and poet

"There are no foreign lands. It is the traveller only who is foreign."

Robert Louis Stevenson (1850–1894), Scottish novelist, poet and travel writer "Why do you go away? So that you can come back. So that you can see the place you came from with new eyes and extra colours. And the people there see you differently too. Coming back to where you started is not the same as never leaving."

Terry Pratchett (born 1948), British author of fantasy novels

"The traveller sees what he sees, the tourist sees what he has come to see." G.K. Chesterton (1874–1936), British author and journalist

1 COMPREHENSION

- a) Make a list of the different options for going abroad.
- b) 유유유 Think of pros and cons for each option and take notes. Share your ideas in small groups.

2 EVALUATION

- a) Read the quotations above. Briefly outline what each one is saying in your own words. Choose one of the quotations and say whether you agree with it. Explain why, why not.
- b) $\, {\mathbb{R}}{\mathbb{N}}\,$ What reasons can you think of for going abroad? Discuss your ideas with your partner.

126 Focus on Facts

Volunteerism in the USA

General aspects about volunteering

It is not only since President Obama called on the Americans to be more committed to service (Serve America Act and American Recovery and Reinvestment, both conceived in 2009) that volunteerism has been a "major cultural phenomenon in the U.S.". There have always been many Americans who believe that "there is an obligation, because of the freedoms they enjoy, to give something back". In 2007, for example, there were about 61 million Americans who volunteered for charitable, religious and national service organizations all over the USA.

With the U.S. being a very religious country, many Americans are convinced that the responsibility for service starts with individuals and not with government. In addition to the 60.8 million volunteers serving in officially-recognized organizations, about 5.2 million people also volunteer informally to help their communities. About 34% of the volunteers serve intensively, volunteering more than 100 or more hours in a year. Especially when faced with dramatic catastrophes, like 9/11 in 2001 or Hurricane Katrina along the Gulf Coast in 2005, Americans are willing to help in disaster recovery and even travel long distances to volunteer

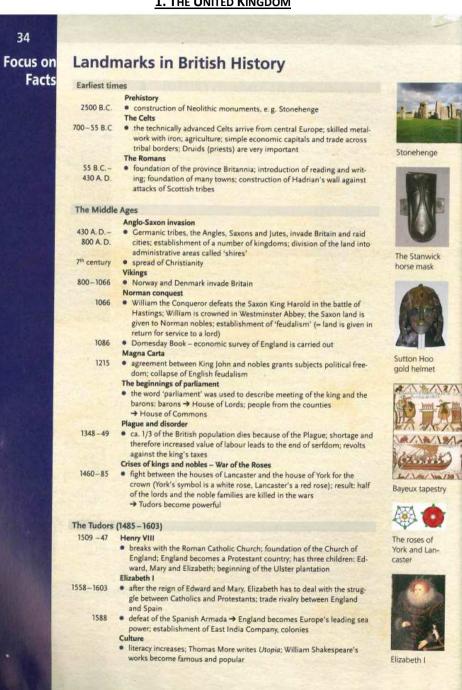
Interestingly, volunteers are typically just about as busy as others, yet they somehow make the time to serve others. Statistically, on average, non-volunteers watch 436 more hours of television (the equivalent of over 10 weeks of full-time work) than volunteers each year.

Major organizations and institutions

Organization	Founders, history	Goals, concerns
AmeriCorps	est. 1993 by President Bill Clinton, ca. 70,000 volunteers annually	national and community service, after-school tutoring, home-building
USA Freedom Corps USA Freedom Corps Mole o Difference. Volumer.	est. in 2002 by President George W. Bush as a reaction to 9/11	volunteer participation in homeland security, fundraising for humanitarian support of e.g. Tsunami victims in 2004
United We Serve	est. in 2009 by President Barack Obama	community work, service projects, crossing bar- riers of religion, race and ethnicity, promoting energy efficiency, supporting literacy
Learn And Serve America	est. in 2009 as the "Edward M. Kennedy Service Act" by President Barack Obama	improvement of service options for Americans of all ages, funding of initiatives
Peace Corps	est. in 1961, ca. 200,000 have served in 139 countries since then	promotion of world peace and friendship, providing technical assistance, development of education, business, agriculture and environment
Youth Build Program	est. in 1990, successor to the Youth Action Program, est. 1984 in East Harlem NYC	community development program, addressing low-income youth to rebuild their community
Citizen Corps	est. in 2002 by President George W. Bush as a reaction to 9/11	co-ordination of governmental and communal volunteer activities, making communities safer (terrorism, natural disasters, illness)
Senior Corps	est. during J. F. Kennedy's presi- dency, ca. 500,000 Americans age 55+ have served since then	supports 3 basic programs: foster grand- parents, senior companions, RSVP (community work)

BASIC INFORMATION ON CLASS TOPICS QUALIFICATION PHASE

1. THE UNITED KINGDOM





BASIC INFORMATION ON CLASS TOPICS QUALIFICATION PHASE

1. THE UNITED KINGDOM

35 Focus on 1642-45 Civil War Facts · ongoing quarrels between the kings and Parliament about rising debts; disputes and fights between Protestants and Catholics; (religious) rebellions in Ireland and Scotland; 1649-60 • Britain: a republic under leadership of Oliver Cromwell who dissolves Parliament; he calls himself 'Lord Protector of England' Oliver Cromwell **Revolution of thought** 1688 • the 'Glorious Revolution' takes place; based on theories of thinkers like John Locke, Parliament has more power than the king; Britain becomes a constitutional monarchy; → Bill of Rights; Act of Settlement 1689/1701 • rising influence of Puritanism; revolution in scientific thinking, e.g. Francis Bacon, Isaac Newton and Christopher Wren The 18th century Beginning of Imperialism 1759 • British control over Canada (defeat of the French in Ouebec): defeat of Isaac Newton the French in India -> control of most of India: rise of transatlantic trade growing radicalism leads to loss of the American colonies: 1775-83 • war against the rebellious American colonies Industrial Revolution James Watt invents the steam engine which revolutionizes the (industrial) production of steel, cotton, etc.; rising numbers of factories and increasing production of goods The 19th century The workshop of the world Watt's steam British factories produce more than any other country in the world: engine control of world traffic and world markets exploitation of workers and suffering farmers -> rise of poverty and misery; Charles Dickens -> descriptions of crime and poverty 1824/34 • first workers' unions are founded/workers' revolt in London British Empire/Victorian Age 1837-1901 • reign of Queen Victoria; she is very popular - connects monarchy with Britain's 'glorious history' The 20th century Queen Victoria 1914-18 World War I · after disastrous destruction and high number of casualties there is great hatred against Germany; Germany is severely punished demand of home rule for Ireland; riots and fighting; civil war 1939-45 World War II more than 360,000 Britons are killed; Britain, the USA, France and the Soviet Union become allies to fight Germany 1945 • the United Nations comes into existence 1945-65 • 500 million people in former colonies become self-governing 1973 Britain joins the EU PM Winston 1982 • in a war, Britain is able to recapture the Falkland Islands from Argentina Churchill 1980s • black immigrants riot against bad housing and economic problems in London, Liverpool, Bristol The 21st century Wars on Iraq 1990-91 Gulf War; invasion led by USA and UK 2003-10 Iraq War; UK ends combat in 2009 → Focus on Vocab, pp. 103 ff. PM Tony Blair Page 98 of 148

BASIC INFORMATION ON CLASS TOPICS QUALIFICATION PHASE

1. THE UNITED KINGDOM

The British Empire

The system of triangle trading

British involvement with the triangular trade began with the colonization of America in 1607 and the West Indies in 1623. The chief British ports were London, Liverpool, Bristol and Glasgow. Triangular trade is a historical term that refers to trade among three ports or regions and countries. The

best-known triangular trading system is the transatlantic trade that operated from the seventeenth until s the early nineteenth century, carrying manufactured goods, raw materials, cash crops - and slaves between West Africa, the Caribbean and American colonies and the European colonial powers.

The use of African slaves was fundamental to growing crops such as cotton and tobacco, which were then exported to Europe. In turn, European goods were used to buy slaves from traders in Africa or the

Caribbean. The slaves were transported to the Americas on the sea lane, the so-called middle passage, which was a horrible journey during which many slaves died of diseases 15 and maltreatment. Slave trade was started in 1501 by Portuguese and Spanish traders; in 1807, the UK Parliament passed a bill that officially abolished 20 the trading of slaves, but there was still illegal slave trade across the Atlantic Ocean that was practiced until the second half of the nineteenth century. 25 There are an estimated 27 million victims of slavery worldwide today.



The British Empire in 1750

The British Empire in the 1750s (the blue shaded areas) traded goods worth £17 million, £8.7 million in exports and £8.3 million in imports. Britain's trade grew enormously because Britain gained control over many different parts of the world. The wish for expansion and the need for raw materials during the Industrial Revolution caused a series of overseas wars among several European countries such as France, Spain and Holland. However, one of the first British trading companies, the East India Company, founded in 1600 during the reign of Elizabeth I, and the Virginia Company, founded by her successor James I, which was the basis for the first North American colony, the Jamestown Colony in 1607, formed the foundations of the growth and rise of the British Empire. Many colonies began as trading centres or were founded to protect a trade route, and were run for the profit of the mother country. The wealthiest 10 area in the early days of the Empire was the West Indies due to large profits from sugar cane and tobacco. Slaves were brought to the West Indies to work on the plantations.

The map shows the variety of goods that Britain imported from all over the world that greatly influenced the British economy and people's lives in the mother country.

→ Focus on Vocab, pp. 103 ff.

47

Focus on

ENGLISH DEPARTMENT

The Stewarts

BASIC INFORMATION ON CLASS TOPICS QUALIFICATION PHASE

1. THE UNITED KINGDOM

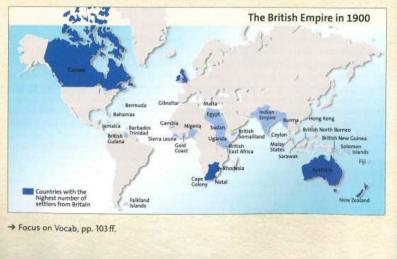
48 Focus on Facts

The British Empire in 1900

- Starting in 1801 the expanding empire was managed from London by the **Colonial Office**. District officers and civil servants were sent out to administer the colonies on behalf of Britain. Regular **imperial conferences** were held in Britain to discuss matters of general concern, such as trade, defence and foreign policy.
- India was controlled for many years by the wealthy East India Company, roads and railroads were built to make trade easier, a Governor-General was put in charge, and British troops and civil servants were sent to the region. In 1858, following the Indian Mutiny, India was placed under the direct control of the British government and a viceroy replaced the Governor-General. British influence in India had expanded from a few trading stations into the Raj (= British rule). In 1876, Queen Victoria was proclaimed
- IP Empress of India. India brought Britain great wealth and strategic advantage, and was called the 'jewel in the crown of the Empire'. Local Indian rulers were allowed to remain in power provided they were loyal to the viceroy. Many British people spent years working in India as civil servants, engineers, police officers, etc. and took their families with them. The second period of empire-building took place in the late nineteenth century. The British Empire was at its largest and most powerful around 1920, when
- Is about 25% of the world's population lived under British rule and over a quarter of the land in the world belonged to Britain. It was said that it was an empire 'on which the sun never sets', and the value of exports and imports was £970 million. At that time Britain was one of the greatest economic and political powers in the world. It was also thought by some people to be a moral obligation and destiny to govern poorer, less advanced countries and to pass on the set of t
- Buropean culture to the native inhabitants. This was what
 Rudyard Kipling called the 'white man's burden'.
 Britain did not only import foreign goods; there was also a great influence of foreign ideas, especially from India.
 In the eighteenth century curry recipes and the famous
- 25 'mulligatawny soup' (the Tamil word for 'pepper-water') appeared in England. Indian designs influenced art and architecture, and polo, snooker and billiards, games which were played by British soldiers in India, were 'exported' to Britain.



The Brighton Pavillion was built in 'Hindoo' style in the early nineteenth century.



BASIC INFORMATION ON CLASS TOPICS QUALIFICATION PHASE

1. THE UNITED KINGDOM

182 Focus on

Facts

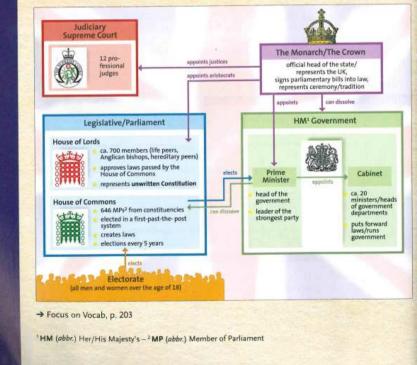
The Political System of the United Kingdom

The United Kingdom (of Great Britain and Northern Ireland) is a constitutional monarchy, in which the monarch is the head of state and the Prime Minister is the head of government. The UK has been a multi-party system since the 1920s, the two largest parties being the Conservative Party and the Labour Party.

Political parties



The U.K. system of government (separation of powers)



BASIC INFORMATION ON CLASS TOPICS QUALIFICATION PHASE

1. THE UNITED KINGDOM

Spot on facts

The United Kingdom - a 'united' kingdom?

The Kingdom unites (and 'disunites'?)

England, Scotland, Wales and Ireland were originally independent countries. England came to dominate the others and over a period of several hundred years a political union was gradually formed: In 1301 5 the English King Edward I made his Welsh-born son Prince of Wales, and by 1542 Wales had been fully annexed by England. In 1604 the king of Scotland became also the king of England, the union of the two countries taking place in 1707. The 'Parliament of

¹⁰ Great Britain', however, remained in London. In 1535 Henry III brought Ireland under English control for the first time and founded the Kingdom of Ireland. This provoked repeated unrest in the country. The union between Ireland and Great Britain came ¹⁵ into effect in 1801, creating the 'United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland'.

As a reaction to subsequent movements to establish home rule in Scotland, Wales and Ireland, Parliament in London set up government offices in 20 these regions to grant them more political authority. After the Irish War of Independence (1919–1921) Ireland was divided, leaving only Northern Ireland as part of the United Kingdom.

In 1998 Ireland, Scotland and Wales were granted their own law-making institutions in areas of regional interest (parliaments in Edinburgh and Belfast, an assembly in Cardiff). This transfer of political powers from the centre to the regions is called devolution. In 2014 a referendum in Scotland on independence

30 was narrowly defeated. Nevertheless, it triggered a

A 'disunited' England? - the North-South divide

The North-South divide in England refers to differences within the country, such as climate, landscape, mentality or wealth. People in the North are generally poorer but quite often seen as more s warm-hearted than southerners. Northerners are more often working-class people, whereas southerners tend to be middle-class, white-collar workers.

Where does the line between the North and the South run? Research based on statistics suggests that the dividing line goes from the mouth of the river Humber in the Northeast to the Bristol Channel in the Southwest (a more or less diagonal line). Historically, the North developed differently from the South: it was the heartland of industrialisation, with mines in Lancashire, Yorkshire and Durham and heavy industry concentrated in cities such as Sheffield, Manchester, and Newcastle.

debate on more devolved power to Scotland, Wales

and Northern Ireland as well as more autonomy to

the regions and the larger cities in England.

In the second half of the 20th century those industries went into decline, leaving the cities partly derelict. In recent years northern cities have undergone major redevelopment and minor economic booms, but in all of them the industrial past is still clearly visible.



The gap between the rich and the poor

Traditionally, Britain has always been a class-ridden society, the rich and the poor leading very different lives (and even speaking different 'languages', i.e. accents).

As a result of the Industrial Revolution the cities expanded with the influx of working-class people from the countryside, but slums grew too. In the Victorian age the slums were notorious for their poverty, their crime, their brutality, their lack of sanitation. Private charities or individuals felt the need to help the less privileged, which eventually led the government to set up welfare policies (e.g. benefits for the poor).

The United Kingdom

20

1942 saw the beginning of the comprehensive welfare state, which aimed at security for the individual from the cradle to the grave.

In recent decades this system has come under attack, and successive Conservative governments have introduced measures to cut back welfare and encourage more self-reliance.

Empire and Commonwealth

From the 16th century British companies set up trading posts around the world to ensure the supply of much needed goods, e.g. tea, sugar, teak, rubber etc. Often these posts came to hold political power

5 over large areas of land and over time became colonies attracting settlers (such as North America, South Africa).

The British government controlled the colonies with the help of governors, administrators and

10 armies, but they often clashed with local powers. One of these clashes lead to the loss of the North American colonies, which became the United States of America. In the 18th century Britain expanded its colonial power to the southern hemisphere and with the acquisition of political power in India and Africa in the 19th century the United Kingdom became the most powerful nation on earth.

The British Empire ruled roughly one quarter of the world's population, and its capital, London, became "the greatest city of any age or country". 20 During the 20th century most former colonies gained independence, but the legacy of the British Empire is still alive today. English has become the world language, and the UK still has close ties with most of its former colonies through the Commonwealth, an 25 association of 54 nations.

The United Kingdom as part of a United States of Europe?

World War II and its aftermath turned out to be a turning-point for Britain: India, the biggest and richest colony, gained independence, marking the beginning decline of the British Empire. Winston 5 Churchill (Prime Minister during and after WW II) was haunted by the idea of a European continent in ruins; he called for a "United States of Europe", hoping to ensure peace and cooperation. But the UK only joined the EU in 1973, and

10 remained sceptical about a European parliament

which was perceived as threatening the sovereignty of the nation state.

In addition, Britain adamantly refused to introduce the euro in 2002 and since then governments have repeatedly rejected membership 15 of the eurozone.

Criticism of the EU has continued to grow, with the foundation of an anti-European party (UKIP in 1993) and serious demands to hold a nationwide referendum on a possible exit from the EU.

 COMPREHENSION Create a timeline of British history with the information given. You may do further research and add more dates.

2 SPEAKING → S32

a) Research one of these topics in detail and give a short talk.

b) Research the most recent developments in the devolution process.

62 ENGLISH DEPARTMENT 63

BASIC INFORMATION ON CLASS TOPICS QUALIFICATION PHASE

1. THE UNITED KINGDOM

2. INDIA

India: From "Crown Jewel of the Empire" to "the World's Largest Democracy"

With its 1.18 billion people, India, officially the Republic of India, is the second-most populous country in the world and the world's largest democracy. In its long history, India has always been known for its commercial and cultural wealth and diversity.

Today India is a federal constitutional republic with a parliamentary democracy and consists of 28 states and 7 union territories. Head of State is the President of India, but the most executive power is exer-10 cised by the Prime Minister, who is also the head of government.

India is considered to be one of the fastest-growing

economies in the world and is well known for its plu-

enlightic multilingual and multi-ethnic society

India's flag, the Tricolour, with the navy blue wheel with 24 spokes (= Ashoka's Dharma Chakra). Each spoke depicts one hour of the day and portrays the prevalence of right-

eousness all 24 hours.



blem, the Lion of Sarnath, third century B.C. 61

Focus on

Facts

History	
Third cent. B.C.	Ashoka the Great unites most of South Asia
320–550 A. D.	the Gupta dynasty is considered to be the Golden Age of India; extensive inventions and discoveries in science, technology, art, literature, religion and philosophy were the foundation of the Hindu culture
1526 - 1857	age of the Mughal Empire ; Mughal Emperors control most of the Indian subcontinent by means of a highly centralized administration
16 th cent.	European powers establish trading posts
1616	the British East India Company is founded
1856	the British East India Company controls most of India
1857	Indian Mutiny: native soldiers employed by the British Army rebel against racial injustice and inequities; as a consequence civilian rebellions follow \rightarrow the East India Company is dissolved and India is directly governed by the Crown \rightarrow British Rule/Raj
1885	the Indian National Congress is founded and developed into one of the largest democratic political parties in the world; it is a major force in the struggle against British rule in India
1920s	the Indian National Congress adopts Gandhi's ideas of non-violent civil disobedience and resistance, which later leads to the Quit India Movement which is also led by Gandhi
1947	the Indian Independence Act leads to the dissolution of the British Indian Empire
15 Aug. 1947	India gains independence; Partition of India into two independent states: the Dominion of Pakistan (later Islamic Republic of Pakistan and People's Republic of Bangladesh) and the Union of India (later Republic of India)
1948	Mahatma Gandhi is assassinated by a Hindu fanatic
1948/1965/ 1971/1999	Indo-Pakistan wars over disputed territory in Kashmir and Jammu
1974	first nuclear test explosion under the codename "Smiling Buddha" (five further tests in 1998
1991	economic liberalization and major reforms initiated by Prime Minister Rajiv Gandhi
2005	the Right to Information Act ensures the right to information for citizens
2009	the Right to Education Bill provides free and compulsory education for children between 6 and 14; it requires all private schools to reserve 25 % of seats for children from poor families

BASIC INFORMATION ON CLASS TOPICS QUALIFYING STAGE

2. INDIA

62 Focus on Facts and figures: Modern India Facts Republic of India 200 400 k New Delhi Afgha nistan 200 3,287,590 square km tine of 1,134,403,000 (2001 census) 1.4% (p.a.) Pakista (Germany: 0%) 68.6 years (Germany: 79 years) 34.6 (per 1,000) (Germany: 4.1 per 1,000) 17 major languages (e.g. Hindi, English, Telugu, Mumhai (B Bangladesh Derr Assamese, Urdu, Santali, Punjabi, Hyderabad Arabian /ishākhapatnar Bengali, Tamil, etc.) and 844 Sea Marmagao 8 Panaji Bengal dialects 64.84% (53.67% women, 75.16% Bangalore Islands Chennai (Madras) men) (Germany: 99%) Pondicherry Port Blair Calicut e Hinduism 80.5%, Islam 13.4%, Cochin o LaccadiveTuticatin Christianity 2.3%, Sikhism 1.9%, Sri Lanka Buddhism 0.7%, Jainism 0.5% Sea Sovereign Socialist Democratic Republic with a Parliamentary system of Government 26 January - Republic Day Share of top six investing coun-15 August - Independence Day tries in FDI¹ inflows (2000-2007) 2 October - Mahatma Gandhi's birthday Service 60% Agriculture 18% 1 Mauritius 85.178 44.24% Industry 22% (data of 2009) 2 United States 18.040 9.37% \$1,032 (2009) GDP pe United Kingdom (Germany \$38,870) 3 15.363 7.98% Netherlands 11.177 4 5.81% 8.8% (of 2010, Q1) 5 Singapore 9,742 5.06% 37% (in 2009) 6 Cyprus 5.742 3.06% telecommunications, information technology, textiles, chemicals, pharmaceuticals, food processing, steel, transportation equipment, cement, mining, petroleum, machinery oil, natural gas, coal (ca. 10% of world's coal reserve), iron, bauxite, titanium, chromite, etc. → Focus on Vocab, pp. 103 ff. FDI (abbr.) Foreign Direct Investment

2. INDIA

Snot on facts

India - an overview

Colonisation and Independence

In 1858 India became a colony of the British Empire and in 1876 Queen Victoria took on the title of Empress of India. India remained a colony for almost a century until 1947. Before 1858 India had 5 been colonised and ruled by the Portuguese, the French and the British East India Company, a trading company with its own private armies. Rebellion against European colonisation occurred again and again throughout India's colonial history. Many 10 Indians had hoped that their loyalty to Britain in World War I in 1914 would be rewarded with Indian self-rule, but they were disappointed. Inspired by the leadership of Gandhi, the Indian National Congress

continued Indian resistance to British rule in the interwar years. On 18th July 1947 King George VI signed the India Independence Act in London and the partition of the Indian subcontinent was sealed. It was divided up into two states with a Hindu and a Muslim majority: India and Pakistan, comprising East and West Pakistan. East Pakistan later separated 20 in 1972 to become Bangladesh with West Pakistan becoming today's Pakistan. The border between India and Pakistan is still disputed and the 'Kashmir problem' (i.e. whether Kashmir belongs to India, to Pakistan or should become an independent state) is 25 still unresolved.

1 RESEARCH 유유은 In a group of four choose one of these topics: The British East India Company -Gandhi - Partition - the 'Kashmir problem' and find out more about it. Then write a short report of about 150 words on your topic. → \$32

A sense of place

Geography: With an area of 3.3 million km2 (over nine times the size of Germany) India is the 3 7th largest country in the world. The mountainous Himalayan region and the Ganges Plain are in

the north whereas most of the southern and central 10 parts of the country belong to the Deccan plateau region. India also has three major river systems: the Indus, the Ganges and the Brahmaputra rivers. India is separated from the rest of Asia by mountains and the sea, which make the country a distinct 15 geographical entity.

The climate is also varied but is tropical in the south and mainly temperate in the north. The southwest or summer monsoon from June to September accounts for 70% of India's rainfall.

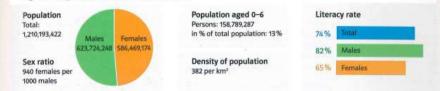
- Politics: The Republic of India is the world's largest democracy with New Delhi as its capital. Based on the British system, the parliamentary form of government has a lower (Lok Sabha) and an upper house (Rajya Sabha). The head of government is the 25 Prime Minister, usually the leader of the majority
- party in the lower house.

Economy	Share of total employment, 2012	Share of GDP [°] , 2012	Share o GDP*, 19
Agriculture	53%	29%	18%
Indian farm	ern large-scale a ners are to beco ving population	me more pr	oductive
Services	21%	44%	56%
less than h	alf the number ways, the count 19%	call centres of people e	employ: mployed

"GDP (Gross Domestic Product) Bruttoinlandsprodukt

Population

Figures at a glance (based on census of India 2011)



- 2 SPEAKING Use the map at the beginning of the topic and the information here to give a talk summing up the most important information on India in two minutes. Use your own words and speak without looking at your notes. → \$22
- 3 ANALYSIS The last Indian census was held in 2011. What questions or comments have you got concerning the census figures?

Hinduism: The main religion in India

India's people are about 80% Hindu, 14% Muslim, 2.5% Christian, 2% Sikh, <1% Buddhist and <1% Jain. Tensions between different religious groups are not uncommon, particularly between Hindus and Muslims, Hinduism is the oldest living religion, with more than 900 million believers worldwide. A central concept is reincarnation (samsara) which is governed

by one's actions and their effects (karma). Hinduism is not based on a single founder or scripture. It has a complex and diverse notion of God that involves many different aspects and incarnations of a supreme being. The three most important of these are Brahma, Shiva and Vishnu.

The Hindu triumvirate



Shiva - the destroyer Shiva's role is destruction. He destroys the universe in order to recreate it and make it better for humankind. Shiva is therefore seen as a source of both good and evil.

Brahma - the creator Brahma is the first god in the Hindu triumvirate or trimurti. His job was the creation of the world and all creatures.



Vishnu - the preserver Vishnu's function is preservation. He returns to the earth in troubled times and restores the balance of good and evil. So far he has been incarnated nine times, but will be reincarnated one more time.

4 ANALYSIS Point out the main differences between Hinduism and what you know of the other major religions worldwide.





38

50

5

39

BASIC INFORMATION ON CLASS TOPICS QUALIFYING STAGE

BASIC INFORMATION ON CLASS TOPICS QUALIFYING STAGE 1./2./3. MULTICULTURALISM AND IMMIGRATION

Great Britain - A Multicultural Society

Immigration and minorities in Great Britain

People have been coming to Britain for centuries, but immigration only became an issue in the 1960s.



93

Focus on

Facts

After World War II, Britain needed more workers and admitted citizens of Commonwealth countries without restriction. Many came from the Carib-

bean and from India, Pakistan and Bangladesh. They found work in hospitals, in the textile industry and in the public transport system, though most jobs were poorly paid. Nearly 500,000 Commonwealth citizens came to Britain before 1962, many of whom were later joined by their families. When there were no longer enough jobs, the Commonwealth Immigrants Act (1962) was passed to restrict the number of immigrants entering Britain. In the following years, several more acts were passed, 10 further restricting the right of foreigners to live in Britain. Immigration is now strictly controlled. Nor-

mally, only people from the European Union and certain Commonwealth citizens can get permission to live in Britain. Britain now accepts about 50,000 immigrants every year.

After periods of racism and violent demonstrations in the 1960s and 1970s, Britain has been making great efforts to integrate people from ethnic minorities into local communities and to develop a mul-15 ticultural society based on equality and acceptance.

Statistical data about minorities and population trends in Britain

The country of origin of people living in Great Britain, The non-white population of Great 2001 (%) Britain, 1951-2001 Non-white population Eastern Europe 3% Other 1% EU 24% 1951 30,000 (est.) 1961 400,000 (est.) Middle East 3% 1971 1.4 million 1981 2.1 million Australasia 4% 1991 3.0 million 2001 4.6 million Western Europe Data: for 1951 and 1961, Spencer (1997); for 1971, 5% Lornas (1973); for 1981, Amin & Richardson (1992); for 1991 and 2001, Office for National Statistics and General Register Office for Scotland Indian Rest of Asia sub-continent 10% 20% Americas Africa 11% 19% Data: Hague, Dustmann et al. 2002 → Focus on Vocab, pp. 103 ff.

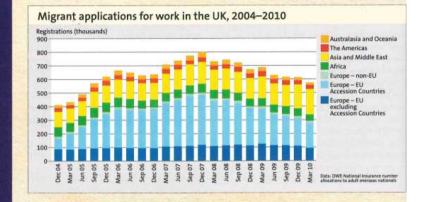
BASIC INFORMATION ON CLASS TOPICS QUALIFYING STAGE 1./2./3. MULTICULTURALISM AND IMMIGRATION

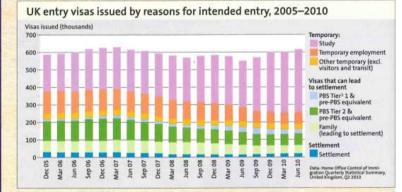
94 Focus on

Facts

Migration and immigration control

The British Office for National Statistics releases a guarterly summary of the official migration data It reveals information about the reasons why people apply for residence in the United Kingdom.





In order to control and systematize immigration there are several visa categories:

- · the visitor and transit visa
- The Points Based System (PBS):
- PBS Tier 1: highly skilled workers
- PBS Tier 2: skilled workers with a job offer - PBS Tier 3: low skilled workers
- PBS Tier 5: youth mobility and temporary

- PBS Tier 4: students

workers

The PBS, implemented in 2008, is a rationalization of immigration control processes for people who are not citizens of the European Economic Area (EEA) or Swiss nationals.

→ Focus on Vocab, pp. 103 ff.

tier [tia(r)] level

1./2./3. MULTICULTURALISM AND IMMIGRATION

Spot on facts

The consequences of migration

Embracing diversity

Did you know that the 'World Day for Cultural Diversity for Dialogue and Development' is on 21st May? In an era of mass-immigration societies are becoming more and more diverse. We speak of cultural diversity

- 5 when people of different races, ethnicities, nationalities, languages, religions or sexual orientations live in a community. UNESCO adopted the Universal Declaration on Cultural Diversity in 2001.
- The idea of World Diversity Day is to give us an opportunity to become aware of the value of cultural diversity and lead the way to more harmony in our culturally diverse society by combatting polarisation and stereotypes.

Definitions

Ethnicity belonging to a group of people who share a common culture, including their history, religion, language and traditions Mass immigration

migration of large groups of people from one geographical area to another Multi-ethnic

describing a society that includes various groups of people from different cultures

Race

the defining of people according to a variety of physical characteristics

 BRAINSTORMING Before you look at the chart below, guess which are the top ten countries people migrate to.

Migration worldwide

Global migration continues to rise. In 2013 there were 232 million international migrants, more than half of which lived in just 10 host countries (see table on the right). Most migrants leave their country in search 5 of better opportunities for themselves and their

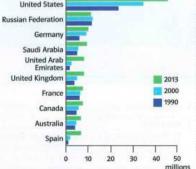
families, but a large number of refugees are fleeing war and persecution. International migration takes away a significant

number of highly educated and skilled individuals from developing countries. This 'brain drain' can

- harm the growth potential in the emigrants' home country, but the money they send back to help their relatives can also boost the economy. The figures in 2011 for the OECD (international economic
- ¹⁵ organisation including 34 developed countries) show that about 30% of the immigrants were highly educated. This means, for example, that one in every nine people born in Africa with a university diploma or corresponding qualification lived in an OECD ²⁰ country in 2010-11.

these are also undocumented, which is cheaper for the employer, but dangerous for the workers as they can be exploited more easily. Number of foreign-born migrants in ... United States

specific projects or seasonal work, e.g. as unskilled workers in construction and agriculture. Many of



In addition to migrants who want to settle permanently in a new country, there are also millions of migrant workers who move to another country for

Os 2 VIEWING Watch the film about young people in Europe who are looking for job opportunities

^L abroad. Compare their situation with that of someone migrating from a developing country to a highly developed one.

BASIC INFORMATION ON CLASS TOPICS QUALIFYING STAGE 1./2./3. MULTICULTURALISM AND IMMIGRATION

Migration and diversity

Immigration to the US

The US is, by definition, a nation of immigrants with a racially, ethnically and culturally diverse population. The most important ethnic groups are the following: Whites are still the majority, but they are

- 5 comprised of the descendants of a multitude of different nationalities and cultures. Britain, Ireland, Italy, Germany, Scandinavia, Eastern Europe etc. – throughout the last centuries war, religious persecution, hunger or poverty have sent waves of
- immigrants from each of these regions to seek a new life in the US.

The demographically most dynamic group are Latinos (from all Central and South American countries) or Hispanics (only from Spanish-speaking

55 countries). Ongoing immigration from Latin America, often by illegal immigrants crossing the Mexican-American border, means that this group is growing rapidly in numbers and importance.

African Americans are the second-largest minority. 20 Many are descended from Africans who were

brought to the American colonies as slaves. After the abolition of slavery in 1865 they faced segregation

Immigration to the UK

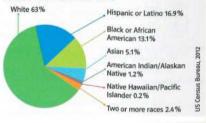
Since WWII the UK has become a much more ethnically and culturally diverse country. A significant number of immigrants from Commonwealth nations, e.g. India, Pakistan or the Caribbean were

- 5 encouraged to come and work in the UK to overcome labour shortages in the 1950s and 1960s. Most of these settled in London and the industrial towns of the Midlands and the North, such as Birmingham or Leicester, where even today the number of British
- ¹⁰ Asians or Black Britons is significantly higher than elsewhere in the country. In the 21st century many people from Eastern Europe have come to work in the UK.
- There is an ongoing debate about the benefits and the limits of mass immigration to the UK. Many, especially on the political right, call for a more restrictive immigration policy. Terrorist attacks by religious fundamentalists who are second or thirdgeneration immigrants have influenced public
- 20 opinion negatively and increased the pressure

and discrimination until the Civil Rights Movement of the 1960s. Anti-discrimination laws and programmes such as affirmative action (positive discrimination, i.e. giving advantages in education and employment to minorities) have improved the social situation of blacks, but the after-effects can still be felt today.

Asian Americans are a very diverse group, ranging from the descendants of Chinese railroad workers in the 18th century to relative newcomers, e.g. from Korea, Vietnam or India.

US population by race/ethnicity



on immigrant communities in the UK, especially Muslim ones, to integrate or even assimilate. Calls for a common British identity and common values and cultural norms have become more insistent. Nevertheless, there is a broad consensus that tolerance and diversity have profited the country and are now an integral part of Britishness.

Ethnic composition of the UK, based on the 2011 Census

Ethnic group	2011 population	%
White: Total	55,010,359	87.1
Asian or Asian British: Indian	1,412,958	2.3
Asian or Asian British: Pakistani	1,174,983	1.9
Asian or Asian British: Bangladeshi	451,529	0.7
Asian or Asian British: Chinese	433,150	0.7
Asian or Asian British: Other Asian	861,815	1.4
Asian or Asian British: Total	4,372,339	6.9
Black or Black British: Total	1,904,684	3.0
Mixed multiple: Total	1,250,229	2.0
Other ethnic groups: Total	643,567	1.0
Total	63,182,178	100

3 VISUALS Look at the two charts on this page and compare the composition of the population in the US and in the UK. From what you've learned on this page and your general knowledge, explain the differences.

86

1./2./3. MULTICULTURALISM AND IMMIGRATION

Spot on language

Avoiding biased or offensive language

Ethnically or racially biased language can create division, separation and tension between you and others. Therefore, use unbiased language when talking about ethnic or cultural groups and show respect to the people you are talking to or talking about. Avoiding language that could be interpreted as biased and offensive is no easy task for a learner of a foreign language. The best way to deal with this issue is to use 5 words that are inclusive and avoid unintended stereotypes.

Here are some examples:

- The term "Native American" has gained favour over "Indian". Depending on your knowledge about the
 person, you might more accurately refer to a specific tribe, like Cheyenne, Navajo, or Sioux.
- The native people of Canada are referred to as "Inuit" not "Eskimo".
- 10 More and more people of mixed racial heritage want to be recognised as such, rather than being identified by a specific racial designation.
- 1 Have you personally ever experienced biased language? How did you feel?
- 2 Why is biased language unacceptable? Give reasons from the text and add more.
- 3 유유용 On your own collect biased words and think about what makes them offensive. Share your findings and feelings in small groups and find unbiased words to replace them.
- 4 Look at the list and match biased and unbiased phrases.

biased language

Spanish people

Only appropriate for people from Spain; and, therefore, imprecise when referring to people from Latin, Central or South America.

o coloured, non-white

negro, negroid, coloured person, dark

👩 illegal alien

Although preferable to just 'illegal' (when we call a person 'illegal', we imply that they are an object), this term lacks recognition of the person's humanity first.

mulatto

Orientals

Certain food may be labelled 'Oriental', and carpets may be 'Oriental', but not people's identities,

Caucasian people

unbiased language

n white people, European American individuals

- bi-racial people, multi-racial individuals Only when it is relevant to state this in a communication.
- o Latino people or Latino/Latina, Hispanic Americans

Asian people, Asian American individuals

Black or African American

people of color

- In the US context, 'people of color' usually refers to Asian/Pacific Islander, Native American, Latino/a, Hispanic, African American and biracial/multiracial people and should not be used synonymously with 'Black' or 'African American.'
- undocumented immigrant or worker; person seeking asylum, refugee

BASIC INFORMATION ON CLASS TOPICS QUALIFYING STAGE 3. THE UNITED STATES

American Beliefs and Values

Although there have been significant shifts in societal concepts and traditions, the following ideals, beliefs and values continue to be some of the most important in American culture.

Fundamental, inalienable and God-given rights

- · Liberty: personal and religious freedom
- Pursuit of happiness:
 - individuality/individual ways of pursuing one's dreams and realizing one's goals
 - (personal and material) success and wealth
 - optimism and belief in "anticipated success"
- Equality: equal rights for men and women/equal rights for people from different ethnicities and social backgrounds
- · Life: leading a secure life protected by the law, government and military

Patriotism

- importance of national symbols (e.g. the Statue of Liberty, the Declaration of Independence, the Constitution, the U.S. flag, the National Anthem, etc.)
- strong identification with one's nationality and pride in being American

Puritanism/Protestant work ethic

- the Puritan belief that hard work, thrift, discipline, self-improvement and responsibility lead to worldly success and prosperity and that this is a sign of God's benevolence and grace
- continuous and active participation in society and entrepreneurial endeavors
- believing that one is exceptional, a member of "God's chosen people", following a divine providence (→ Manifest Destiny)
- belief in authority as a means of protecting the personal rights of the people

The American Dream

- the phrase "American Dream" was first expressed by the American historian and writer James Truslow Adams in 1931, describing a set of complex beliefs, promises of religious and personal freedom and opportunities for prosperity and success, as well as political and social expectations
- its basic underlying concept has roots in the Declaration of Independence of 1776 which refers to basic human rights such as "Life, Liberty and the Pursuit of Happiness" which are "inalienable" and God-given and based on the assumption that "all [people] are created equal"
 Focus on Documents, The American Dream, p. 136

An open and dynamic society

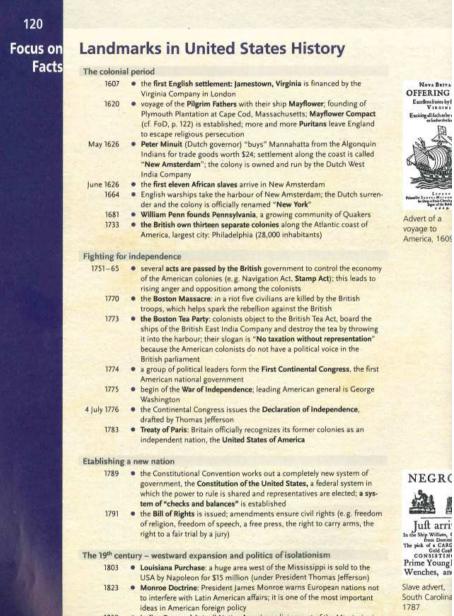
- being generally open to new ideas and inventions (-> progress)
- being generally open to immigrants of any nationality, provided they contribute positively to the country
- different concepts of how to integrate immigrants:
 - a) the melting pot image: people are "melted together", i.e. they are expected to give up their original culture and identity and are "transformed" into a homogeneous "American culture"
 - b) the salad bowl image: national, ethnic and cultural patterns/ habits are kept distinct by the immigrants while they are rather loosely integrated into the "American culture"
- → Focus on Vocab, pp. 174 f.

An Uncle Sam wind wheel toy for children

104

Facts

3. THE UNITED STATES



River are moved west

BASIC INFORMATION ON CLASS TOPICS QUALIFYING STAGE 3. THE UNITED STATES

 until 1850s • exploration of the West - the frontier; the idea of "Manifest Destiny", making the US stretch from east to west coast, is born; Lewis and Clark explore the western plains 1848 • Mexico is annexed; westward expansion is completed - the Manifest Destiny has come true 1862 • Homestead Act is passed by Congress, offering free farms in the West to settlers 1861-65 • Civil War between the Confederate States of America (South) and the Union (North) 1863 • Emancipation Proclamation: official abolition of slavery 1890 • massacre of Sioux Indians in the Battle of Wounded Knee The 20th century - politics of interventionism - "The American Century" 1913 • Henry Ford invents assembly-line production to produce his most famous car, the Model T 	WHITE STAR LIN
 making the US stretch from east to west coast, is born; Lewis and Clark explore the western plains 1848 Mexico is annexed; westward expansion is completed - the Manifest Destiny has come true 1862 Homestead Act is passed by Congress, offering free farms in the West to settlers 1861-65 Civil War between the Confederate States of America (South) and the Union (North) 1863 Emancipation Proclamation: official abolition of slavery 1890 massacre of Sioux Indians in the Battle of Wounded Knee The 20 th century - politics of interventionism - "The American Century" 1913 Henry Ford invents assembly-line production to produce his most famous	WHITE STAR LIN
explore the western plains 1848 Mexico is annexed; westward expansion is completed - the Manifest Destiny has come true 1862 Homestead Act is passed by Congress, offering free farms in the West to settlers 1861-65 Civil War between the Confederate States of America (South) and the Un- ion (North) 1863 Emancipation Proclamation: official abolition of slavery 1890 massacre of Sioux Indians in the Battle of Wounded Knee The 20 th century - politics of interventionism - "The American Century" 1913 Henry Ford invents assembly-line production to produce his most famous	WHITE STAR LIN
 1848 Mexico is annexed; westward expansion is completed - the Manifest Destiny has come true 1862 Homestead Act is passed by Congress, offering free farms in the West to settlers 1861-65 Civil War between the Confederate States of America (South) and the Un- ion (North) 1863 Emancipation Proclamation: official abolition of slavery 1890 massacre of Sioux Indians in the Battle of Wounded Knee The 20th century - politics of interventionism - "The American Century" 1913 Henry Ford invents assembly-line production to produce his most famous 	WHITE STAR LIN
Destiny has come true 1862 Homestead Act is passed by Congress, offering free farms in the West to settlers 1861-65 Civil War between the Confederate States of America (South) and the Union (North) 1863 Emancipation Proclamation: official abolition of slavery 1890 massacre of Sioux Indians in the Battle of Wounded Knee The 20 th century – politics of interventionism – "The American Century" 1913 Henry Ford invents assembly-line production to produce his most famous	WHITE STAR UN
settlers Civil War between the Confederate States of America (South) and the Un- ion (North) Emancipation Proclamation: official abolition of slavery massacre of Sioux Indians in the Battle of Wounded Knee The 20 th century – politics of interventionism – "The American Century" 1913 • Henry Ford invents assembly-line production to produce his most famous	WHITE STAR LIN
settlers Civil War between the Confederate States of America (South) and the Un- ion (North) Emancipation Proclamation: official abolition of slavery massacre of Sioux Indians in the Battle of Wounded Knee The 20 th century – politics of interventionism – "The American Century" 1913 • Henry Ford invents assembly-line production to produce his most famous	WHITE STAR LIN
ion (North) Emancipation Proclamation: official abolition of slavery 1890 • massacre of Sioux Indians in the Battle of Wounded Knee The 20 th century – politics of interventionism – "The American Century" 1913 • Henry Ford invents assembly-line production to produce his most famous	WHITE STAR LIN
 Emancipation Proclamation: official abolition of slavery massacre of Sioux Indians in the Battle of Wounded Knee The 20th century – politics of interventionism – "The American Century" Henry Ford invents assembly-line production to produce his most famous 	WHITE STAR LIN
 1890 massacre of Sioux Indians in the Battle of Wounded Knee The 20th century – politics of interventionism – "The American Century" 1913 Henry Ford invents assembly-line production to produce his most famous 	WHITE STAR LIN
The 20 th century – politics of interventionism – "The American Century" 1913 • Henry Ford invents assembly-line production to produce his most famous	WHITE STAR LIN
1913 • Henry Ford invents assembly-line production to produce his most famous	WHITE STAR LIN
in the product of the production to produce the theory failings	WHITE STAR LIN
	WHITE STAR UN
	A.
1900-20 • peak years of immigration to the USA (ca. 16 million immigrants)	
1917 • US declares war on Germany; President Wilson wants to defeat Germany	
"to make the world safe for democracy and to end all wars"	And A
1918 • "Wilson's Fourteen Points"; ideas for lasting peace and a League of	and the second s
Nations 1920s • The Roaring Twenties: first Immigration Acts are passed by Congress to	1-C-CREDITION CONTRACTOR
1920s The Roaring Twenties: first Immigration Acts are passed by Congress to reduce immigration	NEW YORK
1929 • Wall Street Crash	Historical ad-
1930s • the Great Depression and Roosevelt's New Deal policy	vert, 1921
1939-45 • World War II: 1944 invasion of Normandy (D-Day, 6 June)	
1945 • 6 August: American B29 bomber drops atomic bomb on Hiroshima;	A CONTRACTOR OF
9 August: second atomic bomb is dropped on the city of Nagasaki	and the second
1948-52 • Marshall Plan: humanitarian aid for millions of suffering people in	联 7
Europe; Berlin Airlift	AND PERSONAL PROPERTY AND INC.
1940s-89 • Cold War; communist versus capitalist nations; 1950s: "Balance of	Contraction of Contra
Terror": politics of deterrence, nuclear armament	1919
1961-63 • John F. Kennedy: first Catholic president; assassinated in Nov. 1963	
1955-68 • Civil Rights Movement: Martin Luther King is its most famous leader;	NAME AND ADDRESS OF
he is assassinated in 1968 1964 Civil Rights Act outlaws racial discrimination and segregation	Apollo 11
1954 Civil Rights Act outlaws racial discrimination and segregation	moon landing
1962 • Cuban Missile Crisis	THE OWNER WHEN
1965–73 • Vietnam War	in the second
1969 • Moon landing: US astronauts are the first human beings on the moon	100
1987-89 • Mikhail Gorbachev and Ronald Reagan end the era of the Cold War;	- 500.0
destruction of nuclear missiles; German reunification	ALC: NOT THE OWNER.
1990/91 • President George Bush begins the Gulf War	MAL N.
The 21 st century	Attack on
2001 • 9/TI attacks on World Trade Center and Pentagon; invasion of Afghanistan	World Trade
→ President declares "War on Terror" and the so-called "Axis of Evil"	Center, 9/11
2002 • Department of Homeland Security is created; US Naval base in Guanta-	
namo, Cuba is turned into a detainment camp for prisoners charged with terrorism	
2003 Invasion of Iraq, begin of Iraq War	(ath
2007 • the US "housing bubble" collapses causing the crash of the real estate	A SK
market and damaging financial institutions worldwide	
2008 • the bankruptcy of Lehman Brothers Holdings Inc. causes drastic losses on	
the stock market which lead to one of the most serious global economic	HOPE
crises since 1929	INVER
2009 • Barack Obama is the first African-American President	Obama
2010 • gradual withdrawal of the troops in Iraq	election poster

→ Focus on Vocab, pp. 174 f.



121

Focus on

Facts







ENGLISH DEPARTMENT

MOJ

)ES

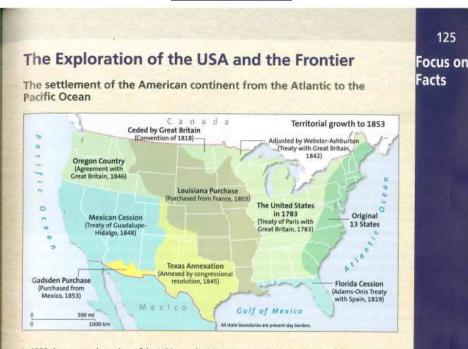
る

ved

America, 1609

1830 • Indian Removal Act: all Native Americans living east of the Mississippi

BASIC INFORMATION ON CLASS TOPICS QUALIFYING STAGE 3. THE UNITED STATES



In 1800 the western boundary of the USA was the Mississippi River. The land west of the river, Louisiana, belonged to France. In **1803**, **Thomas Jefferson** made a deal to buy the Louisiana Territory from the French for \$15 million (Louisiana Purchase), as Napoleon needed money for the war against Britain. The land of the United States more than doubled and now almost reached to the Rocky Mountains. s Jefferson hoped to find an easy way across the continent to the Pacific Ocean, and in 1804 he hired seasoned army officers Meriwether Lewis and William Clark to explore the geography, the lands, the people and the animals in that unknown and uncivilized **frontier** area. After two years they returned with valuable information about the land they had crossed.

The lands beyond Louisiana were known as Oregon, an area which included today's Washington, Oregon, Idaho and the Canadian province of British Columbia. Although the British still had trading posts and many settlements there, they were soon outnumbered by thousands of American settlers who had been "infected" by the "Oregon Fever". In **1832, the first Oregon Trail settlers** started in Independence, Missouri, packed their possessions on wagons and set off for the West.

American newspapers and politicians began to talk about an idea called "Manifest Destiny", meaning that it was the clear intention of fate that the United States should reach from the east coast to the west coast, i.e. from the Atlantic to the Pacific Ocean. In 1848, after two years of fighting and war, the annexation of the Mexican territories completed the "Manifest Destiny" of the USA, which had grown from a small area along the east coast to one of the largest countries in the world.

When the **Puritans** disembarked in **Massachusetts in 1620**, they believed they were "**God's Chosen** ²⁰ People" who were being guided by God and divine Providence, and that **America was the "Promised** Land" in which they would establish the New Israel. Thomas Jefferson and Benjamin Franklin considered images of the Promised Land for the Nation's Great Seal. By the middle of the nineteenth century this promise seemed to have been delivered to the American people.

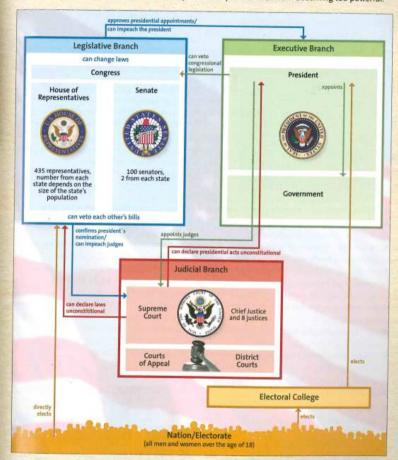
→ Focus on Vocab, pp. 174f.

BASIC INFORMATION ON CLASS TOPICS QUALIFYING STAGE 3. THE UNITED STATES

The Political System of the United States

The U.S. system of government (checks and balances)

The United States Constitution demands a separation of power. Each branch of government exercises power over each of the other branches. This prevents any one branch from becoming too powerful.



The United States has a **first-past-the-post voting system** in which the highest polling candidate is given all the votes and elected. Most states require citizens who wish to vote to be **officially registered**. Every **legal citizen over the age of 18**, regardless of ethnicity or gender, **has the right to vote**. Voting is carried out by **free and secret ballot**, in which the voters cast a **ballot** (paper) in a **ballot** box or via (electronic) **voting machines** in **polling places**, or via mail ballots.

→ Focus on Vocab, p. 203

BASIC INFORMATION ON CLASS TOPICS QUALIFYING STAGE 3. THE UNITED STATES

190 Focus on

Facts

Political parties

In 1787, America's founders expected constitutional provisions such as the separation of power, checks and balances, federalism and indirect election of the president by an electoral college would deter the formation of parties. However, in 1800 the US became the first nation to develop organized political parties which had executive power. Since the 1860s, the Republican and Democratic parties have dominated American politics. In a 2006 Gallup Poll, ca. 59 percent of Americans identified themselves as either Republicans or Democrats.

Those people claiming to be independent normally have partisan leanings.

was established in the 1850s by evolved from the party of Thomas Jefferson, formed before 1800 Abraham Lincoln and others who opposed slavery is considered to be more liberal is considered to be more conservative

- · believes that government has an obligation to provide social and economic programs
- favours a higher taxation of the rich
- has a stronger obligation to environmental engagement

The election process

- the US Constitution stipulates that a presidential election is to be held once every four years
- · in February of the election year, the parties nominate candidates in so-called state primaries and caucuses (US, Gremium, Ausschuss)
- · at national party conventions, usually held in the summer, state delegates vote for the party's presidential candidate
- on election day (usually the first Tuesday following the first Monday in November) every citizen has an opportunity to vote in a process of indirect popular election known as the electoral college, in which the number of electors is based on the population of the state
- these electors assemble following election day, cast their ballots and officially select the next president
- the Constitution mandates that Senators be elected directly by the voters of their state once every six years
- the members of the House of Representatives are also elected directly by the voters of their state every two years

The inauguration of the president

- the president-elect and the vice president-elect take the oath of office and are inaugurated on 20 January
- · over the years, the inauguration has been expanded to a daylong event, including the oathtaking ceremony, parades, speeches and balls
- traditionally, the sworn-in president delivers a speech, the so-called inaugural address, in which he inspires hope for the future and outlines fundamental plans and objectives
- → Focus on Vocab, p. 203



tends to believe that social and economic programs

· believes that a strong private sector makes citizens

are too costly to taxpayers

encourages private enterprise

less dependent on government

"I ... do solemnly swear that I will faithfully execute the office of President of the United States, and will to the best of my ability, preserve, protect, and defend the Constitution of the United States."



The making of a nation

Independence

Spot on facts

Despite the prior existence of Native American cultures, the history of the United States as a nation state usually begins in 1492 with Columbus's 'discovery' of America. It wasn't until after 1600 that

- European colonists began to arrive, mostly from England. By the 1770s there were 13 British colonies on the northeastern seaboard. Colonists came for many reasons, such as the desire to practice their religion freely or to take advantage of the
- 10 opportunities the 'empty' continent presented. Some were sent against their will to avoid prison or to repay debts.

At first the colonies were dependent on goods and support from Europe, but over time they prospered

- 15 and became more economically independent. The main cause of the rift with Britain was dissatisfaction with the fact that they had little control over their own lives since all major decisions were made in London. Unrest came to a head when Britain set heavy
- 20 taxes on certain goods and the colonists refused to pay, unless they had representation in Parliament.
- During the ensuing Revolutionary War (1775-1783) a committee of statesmen (known as the Founding

Equality and freedom

Equality and freedom are cornerstones of American society. The Bill of Rights, which was added to the Constitution in 1791, explicitly guaranteed religious freedom and freedom of speech as well as equal 5 rights and opportunities for all American citizens

- regardless of class or background. The separation of church and state, a key element in American law, has led to modern America having a wide spectrum of creeds and believers.
- Yet equality and freedom were not granted to 10 all American citizens automatically. After the Civil War between the northern and southern states in which its abolition played an important part, slavery was finally abolished in 1865. Even then it took the
- 15 Civil Rights Movement of the 1960s to achieve equal rights for the descendants of those freed slaves.
- American women also had to fight for their rights, not gaining the right to vote until 1920. The struggle for equality is still not over, as they only earn three-20 quarters of the average pay of American men.

134

Fathers) came

together to draft the Declaration of Independence. This document, written by Thomas Jefferson and announced on July 4, 1776, was to be the guideline for the Constitution of 1787. The Founding Fathers ensured in

the Constitution that

the three branches

of government -



15

the executive (the Yankee Doodle, 1776 President), the judicial

(the Supreme Court) and legislative (Congress) would share power in a system of checks and balances.

Today the Fourth of July is a federal holiday in the US, celebrated with fireworks, parades, barbecues. 45 baseball games and family reunions.

Other minorities who have had to fight - and are still fighting - for freedom and equality are Native Americans and gays and lesbians.

The equality of the social order, which in theory offers equal opportunities for all, often has a more 25 sobering reality. Education is free and available to all, but the quality of that education can depend on where a child goes to school. Higher education is often a question of money, with the opportunities for students from a wealthy home being greater than those from poor neighborhoods. And even in a democratic society there are class differences, a fact many Americans try hard to ignore.

Americans are proud of these ideals of equality and freedom. Their deep-seated patriotism is often 35 regarded as arrogance by people in other parts of the world and can blind some Americans to any shortcomings within the country and in America's dealings with other nations. These factors are often the roots of anti-Americanism around the world. 40

BASIC INFORMATION ON CLASS TOPICS QUALIFYING STAGE 3. THE UNITED STATES

Immigration

The first Europeans to come to America were colonists or settlers and were mainly from Britain, Spain, the Netherlands and France. They all had to survive an arduous journey across the Atlantic. Many s were driven by the desire to escape from religious, political or economic oppression and the belief that America would offer them a better life.

The peak periods of immigration were the mid-19th century (mainly from Northern and

- Northwestern Europe, particularly Germans after the failed revolution of 1848 and Irish during the famine years of 1845–52), the early 20th century (mainly from Southern and Eastern Europe) and post-1965, when a change in the immigration laws led to more
- 15 non-Europeans entering the country. This eventually changed the ethnic make-up of the nation. While European immigrants accounted for nearly 60% of the total foreign population in 1970, they made up only 15% in 2000. This is due to steadily increasing 20 immigration from Latin America - mainly Mexico, but
- also Cuba, El Salvador and the Dominican

The American Dream

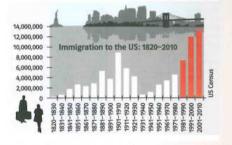
The American Dream is a set of beliefs and ideals which, in theory at least, allow every American the freedom to prosper and advance socially and financially through hard work. The concept 5 is hard to pin down because there are individual interpretations. Some dream of fame and fortune; others of a fulfilled life or simply a life without state interference.

The idea of the American Dream probably began to take hold when Thomas Jefferson wrote in 1776 that Americans were born with the unallenable rights to "life, liberty and the pursuit of happiness." The phrase itself was actually coined by James Truslow Adams in his 1931 book *The Epic of America*:

15 "The American Dream is that dream of a land in which life should be better and richer and fuller for Republic – and from Asian countries such as China, the Philippines and India. America once saw itself as a melting pot in which

these immigrants ideally gave up their way of life, language and culture and became part of a unified, monocultural American nation. But since 1970 this metaphor has largely been replaced by the idea of a multicultural and diverse America – a salad bowl in which different cultures mix, but remain different.

The US then and now



everyone, with opportunity for each according to ability or achievement. [...] It is not a dream of motor cars and high wages merely, but a dream of social order in which each man and each woman shall be able to attain to the fullest stature of which they are innately capable, and be recognised by others for what they are, regardless of [...] birth or position."

For centuries people have come to America – and are still coming – attracted by the American Dream: 25 the economic dream of success and prosperity ('from rags to riches'), the social dream of equality and opportunity, the political dream of democracy and justice, or the personal dream of freedom and selfrealisation. While for many US citizens the dream is 30 still alive, for many others it is an illusion or has – for whatever reason – even turned into a nightmare.

- ©s 1 LISTENING Listen to the dialogue about the role of the frontier and then write a text about it similar in the fact files above. You may use additional research materials. + \$12.2
 - 2 SPEAKING Choose one of these topics or one of the other abstract ideas from Task 4 on the previous page and prepare a short talk on it.
 - 3 RESEARCH Create a timeline of the US based on the dates and events in these texts. Then use the internet or other resources to add to your timeline.

135

BASIC INFORMATION ON CLASS TOPICS QUALIFYING STAGE 3. THE UNITED STATES

160 Focus on Facts

Minorities in the USA

Immigration into the United States of America and minorities living in the USA

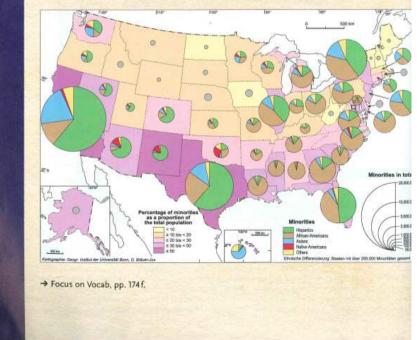
The English went to North America from the late sixteenth century; Spain sent people to the southern part of the region and many Dutch and Germans also went over. When the U.S. became independent, it was written into the **Constitution** that there could be no limits on immigration until 1808. The main period of immigration was between 1800 and 1917. Early in this period.



many more immigrants arrived from Britain and Germany, and many Chinese went to California. Late the main groups were Italians, Irish, Eastern Europeans and Scandinavians. Many Jews came fro Germany and Eastern Europe. Just before World War I, there were nearly a million new immigrants p year. Most Americans have a clear idea of what life was like for the immigrants: They left home becauto they were poor and thought they would have better opportunities in the U.S. Many immigrants came.

New York and Boston, and Ellis Island, near New York, became famous as a receiving station. The Immigration Act of 1917, and other laws that followed it, limited the number of immigrants whe could settle in the U.S. and established quotas based on their country of origin. Since then, immigr tion has been limited to a few people who are selected for an immigrant visa, commonly called a gree s card. Hispanics and Asians now make up the largest groups of immigrants. The Immigration ar Naturalization Service (INS) is responsible for issuing visas. It also tries to prevent people from cross ing the borders and entering the U.S. illegally.

Ethnic minorities in the USA (US census of 2000)



4. GLOBALISATION

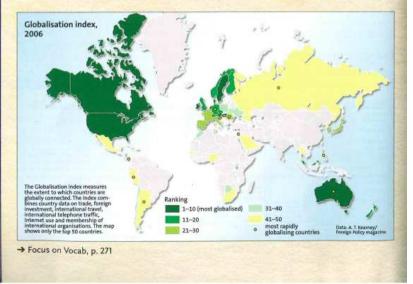
256 Focus on

us on Globalisation Facts

Globalisation is the intergration/connection of regional economies through a global network based on communication, transportation and trade.

Globalisation cube with the leading global economies and corporations

Defining features	Threats/dangers	Opportunities	Impacts
 communication technology resources modern means of transportation multinational corporations liberalization of trade barriers reorganization of work mass tourism 	 ecological exploitation of countries that provide the resources exploitation of workers growing inequity scramble for resources can lead to conflict growing environmental problems unprecedented growth of mega corporations rising unemployment for unskilled workers terrorism due to open borders 	 exchange/circulation of ideas exchange of culture exchange of language generating capital investment in poorer countries higher living standard in the developing countries innovation through the exchange of ideas free trade of goods mutual support and un- derstanding due to stron- ger interdependencies 	 cultural imperialism/ Westernization of the world rising migration fear of being overrun restrictions on immigration mutual influence of cultures on each other outsourcing of work





World Trade

World Economic Forum

The World Economic Forum (WEF), founded in 1971, is a Swiss nonprofit foundation that meets annually in Davos, and brings together international business and political leaders, intellectuals and journalists to discuss pressing global issues.



⁵ Besides its economic focus, the annual meeting has become a neutral platform for political leaders to resolve political differences. In 2008, Microsoft founder Bill Gates gave a keynote speech on "creative capitalism", which combines generating profits and solving the world's inequities by using market forces to address the needs of the poor worldwide. The participants are considered a global elite – a think tank of internationally-oriented experts, including a group of "Young Global Leaders" consisting of under-forty-year-old leaders from all around the world and representing a wide range of disciplines and sectors.

BASIC INFORMATION ON CLASS TOPICS QUALIFYING STAGE

4. GLOBALISATION

WEF has also launched several global initiatives, e.g. the Global Health Initiative, the Global Education Initiative and the Partnering Against Corruption Initiative.

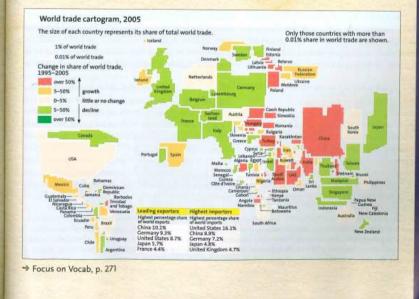
However, there is heavy criticism as well: WEF, along with the G8 and the World Trade Organisation, as are viewed as a "mix of pomp and platitude" by anti-globalisation activists and many NGOs.

Further economic forums

 The Group of Eight (G8): France, Germany, Italy, Japan, the United Kingdom, the United States, Canada and Russia

This group has occasionally been expanded, e.g.:

- Outreach Five (O5): plus Brazil, China, India, Mexico and South Africa
- Group of Twenty (G20): the 20 major economies of Africa, North America, South America, East Asia, South Asia, Southeast Asia, Western Asia, Eurasia, Europe and Oceania; the group meets semi-annually, and the last meeting took place in Seoul in November 2010.



4. GLOBALISATION

Spot on facts

Chances and challenges of globalisation

Globalisation - a basic definition

Globalisation refers to the growing global network of trade, travel, knowledge and influence. It is possible today for individuals and groups of people to buy and sell products all over the world, to travel to any place and to exchange information 5 across the planet.

This freedom, however, can also put human rights, the environment, individual cultures and financial security into danger. The advantages of the global network are great; but the challenges it brings could be greater. Interestingly, the global 10 network will probably be the key not only to global problems, but also to their solutions.

People, cultures and lifestyles

Chances

Globalisation affects us all on a daily basis: People can move and travel freely, seeing more of the world and learning about other people. This increases cultural awareness and reduces the causes of

5 conflict. Ongoing exchange between academics. experts or politically interested people all over the world makes research, protests and activism more effective, fostering the emergence of a global civil society. Migrants can move to different countries to 10 find work and support their families, helping these countries to fill important labour gaps at the same time.

On a more official level, international government and non-government organisations (NGOs) can share 15 knowledge and know-how and bring help to where it is needed. Help ranges from granting microcredit loans (to start a small business) or debt relief to providing technology, education, food and medicines. Similarly, conflicts between countries can be handled

20 diplomatically and with a better understanding of the situation because more information is available than ever before.

All these possibilities contribute to a global 'togetherness'. Individual people, groups and even 25 nations can find friends and partners with similar interests and ideas all over the globe. Traditions and regional and cultural identity can be shared. explained, continued and celebrated.

"The internet means we can organise anti-globalisation demos across the planet."

Challenges

Globalisation is often seen as synonymous with westernisation. Western culture, propagated by the 30 media, serves as an example for many developing countries, but also endangers the cultural diversity of nations' languages, traditions, ways of life, values and beliefs.

Yet Western influence is not limited to culture. 35 Developed countries are tempted to use their economic and political power to intervene in other countries' affairs. However, such interventions are not always welcome or beneficial and can cause a divide or even war. Moreover, help from the outside often hinders developing countries from building functional administrations and infrastructure of their own

As a result of global consumption, travel and transport, limited resources are disappearing. The 45 rapid economic growth of large emerging markets like China, India or Brazil, who are adopting the West's unsustainable lifestyle and consumerism, make the situation worse. The disposal of mountains of (often toxic) waste is often left to Third World workers - the result of the widespread "Not in my back yard" attitude. The availability of fresh water, which is becoming scarce, may be crucial in the future. Potential 'side effects' of increased migration are illegal immigration, people-smuggling and the 55 frequently bad treatment of immigrant minorities.

1 visuals Choose one of the cartoons. Describe it and interpret its message. → \$28.2



BASIC INFORMATION ON CLASS TOPICS QUALIFYING STAGE 4. GLOBALISATION

A network of products

Chances

First and foremost, globalisation means gaining access. People have access to essential products, specialities and medicines from all over the world. and both small and large companies have the chance

5 to sell their products worldwide.

The global market area potentially secures jobs, livelihoods and economic stability, since customers and companies have access to (or can outsource) cheaper materials, products and labour, lowering 10 costs and raising profits.

The global trade

of goods supports poor communities especially in 15 developing countries, giving people muchneeded jobs and improving local infrastructure. Fair

20 trade campaigns can help developing countries to get a fair share of the profits created.

The communication network

Chances

Access to global communication via mobile and internet technology is increasingly cheap and unrestricted. This means even people in remote or rural areas can communicate, be educated and work 5 without an expensive landline infrastructure.

....But in the Global Marketplace

you're only 650,247,555th."

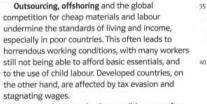
Global communication facilitates trade, travel and contact with friends, family and business partners. Developers can cooperate, e.g. in education, human rights and aid organisations. There is also a political

10 dimension to the communication network: Anyone able to use a computer has a voice now, from young people or immigrants without voting rights to dissidents in dictatorships. News and instant information can save lives in a crisis or expose crime 15 and propaganda.

Challenges

In theory, open markets and a globalised economy 25 provide a level plaving field for everybody. However, political interests, financial power and subsidisation contribute to an unfair distribution of wealth and power as well as the rise of 'global players' (large international corporations), dominating market shares and lowering the chances of survival for small businesses. Apart from that, interdependent financial networks make economies increasingly vulnerable to financial disasters.

35



However, these production conditions are often 'invisible' to those who buy things. Customers are 45 encouraged by advertising and peer pressure to consume more than they need without knowing how and where the things they buy have been produced.

Challenges

Concerns are voiced about personal data, which has become less secure, and the fact that data 'paper trails' can be used to track, observe, predict and control people's behaviour and movements. Nondemocratic governments in particular may try to use 20 the internet to control their citizens.

At the same time, large parts of the world like those in extreme poverty, remote places or war zones, still have little or no access to the global internet network. This great disadvantage may even 25 threaten their existence.

Finally, the global flood of information can make it very difficult to find out which information is important and to assess the quality of the source.

2 SPEAKING AAA Form groups of four or five. Choose five of the challenges mentioned on these two pages and discuss possible solutions.

14

BASIC INFORMATION ON CLASS TOPICS QUALIFYING STAGE 5. VISIONS OF THE FUTURE - SCIENCE, TECHNOLOGY, UTOPIA AND DYSTOPIA

Spot on facts

Science and technology changing society

Science vs. technology

Based on facts and evidence, science tries to describe and explain phenomena of the natural world and to make predictions of future developments. It includes fields such as physics, chemistry, biology and geology but also computer science and social science.

Applied science concentrates on research which directly leads to new inventions. It aims at gaining scientific knowledge which can be used to develop new devices, machines and innovative technologies 10 capable of improving our lives or solving problems.

Challenges of the 21st century

- With the world population growing and natural resources decreasing, more and more people question the pursuit of economic growth at all costs. There is a new demand for sustainability.
- 5 This principle calls for a balance between the needs of present and future generations. Sustainable development implies the use of renewable energies and the recycling of materials.
- However, this doesn't mean an end to research 10 and progress. These are examples of today's most important and controversial developments:
- · Internet technologies have revolutionised communication (e.g. email, social media), the transfer of data and access to information, and the
- 15 economy. Fears relate to the loss of privacy, new methods of surveillance and espionage and to the commercial exploitation of personal data. · Genetic engineering may enable people to cure presently incurable diseases and to extend their
- life span. GM foods may help reduce problems of hunger and malnutrition, but also lead to unforeseen effects on flora and fauna. Moreover. their use increases the dependence of farmers on big biotechnology corporations.

· Research on artificial intelligence and robotics 34 aims to make our lives easier by developing e.g. driverless cars, bionic body parts, robots (for the household and in health care) and drones (for civil

Whereas science is basically neutral, the way it

associate progress with efficiency, productivity and 15

is used in technology may be beneficial or harmful

for mankind (cf. nuclear power to provide energy

an improved living standard. Critics point out that

technological processes may produce pollutants and

destroy limited natural resources. They question the

security of new devices, raise ethical questions and

demand new regulation and laws.

vs. nuclear weapons). Advocates of technology

- and military use). · Nanotechnology makes ultra-small tools and
- powerful mini-machines smaller than a pinhead. · Neuroscience studies how the nervous system

30

works and how the brain impacts behaviour and thinking, thus raising questions about whether we really have free will.



- 1 COMPREHENSION Choose one of the following options:
 - 1. At a youth conference titled "Is modern-day technology a blessing or curse?", each participant is asked to give a one-minute introductory statement. Prepare and make this statement.
- 2. A podcast for teens deals with the question above. Write the introduction for that podcast.
- 2 VISUALS Describe and interpret the cartoon. → S28.2

BASIC INFORMATION ON CLASS TOPICS QUALIFYING STAGE 5. VISIONS OF THE FUTURE - SCIENCE, TECHNOLOGY, UTOPIA AND DYSTOPIA

Science and utopia

Utopia and dystopia

.

The word utopia comes from the Greek words for 'no place' and 'good place' and is used to describe an imaginary perfect society set in a distant place or the future. The word was first used by Thomas More in

- England in 1516 as the title for his book Utopia. Until well into the 19th century, utopian visions of society predominated because technological progress was largely seen positively. Towards the end of the 19th century, however, the power of
- industrialisation and science created anxiety about the future, a feeling which was intensified by two world wars and the emergence of totalitarian states. Pessimistic visions of future societies (socalled 'anti-utopias' or 'dystopias') were written,
- often characterized by a non-democratic form of government and the suppression of the individual, e.g. by advanced surveillance technology. Famous examples include Aldous Huxley's Brave New World (1932), George Orwell's Nineteen Eighty-Four (1949) 20 and Margaret Atwood's The Handmaid's Tale (1985).

The main aim of dystopias is to implicitly criticise negative tendencies in contemporary societies, which if unaddressed may become uncontrollable in the future. Today they often focus on environmental disaster, genetic engineering, and once again. surveillance technology. Recent examples are Dave Eggers' The Circle (2013) and Suzanne Collins' teennovel trilogy The Hunger Games (2008-2010).



Science fiction and fantasy

In contrast to utopian and dystopian stories, which focus on future societies, science fiction (sci-fi or SF for short) stories primarily deal with scientific or technological advances and their effects on society and private life. The main technique of sci-fi writers is extrapolation, i.e. they predict believable future developments from current trends in science and technology. Science fiction usually mixes advanced

technology (e.g. time travel, spaceflights), nonhuman characters (e.g. aliens, robots, humanoid computers) and action-packed plots (e.g. the invasion of the earth, technology out of control).

Classics of the genre include H. G. Wells' The Time Machine (1895), Arthur C. Clarke's 2001: A Space

Odyssey (1968) and Isaac Asimov's novels and short stories, which are often centred around robots.

Fantasy is a genre focusing on magic and supernatural elements, usually providing a clear distinction between good and evil. It creates its own fantastic, internally consistent setting far beyond today's society and technology. Terry Pratchett is one of the most prolific fantasy writers. Many fantasy novels and films have become bestsellers, most notably J. R. R. Tolkien's Lord of the Rings (1954-55), J. K. Rowling's Harry Potter (1997-2007) and George R. 35 R. Martin's A Song of Ice and Fire (turned into the TV series Game of Thrones since 2011).

The distinction between these four genres, however, is blurred. Many works of science fiction contain strong utopian or dystopian elements and dystopian societies are often based on future technologies, e.g. Kazuo Ishiguro's novel Never Let Me Go (2005) or films like The Matrix (1999) and the Star Trek series. Combinations of science fiction and fantasy are also very popular - think of David Mitchell's novel Cloud Atlas (2004) or the ongoing Star Wars film series.

- 3 COMPREHENSION Turn the information from the texts above into a grid which explains, in keywords, the differences between the four types of 'speculative fiction' (definition, focus, examples).
- 4 SPEAKING Give a five-minute book report on a speculative fiction novel and classify which genre(s) it belongs to. $\rightarrow \triangle 2$

Page 126 of 148

183

BASIC INFORMATION ON CLASS TOPICS QUALIFYING STAGE 5. VISIONS OF THE FUTURE – SCIENCE, TECHNOLOGY, UTOPIA AND DYSTOPIA

Genetic Engineering

Genetic engineering (or genetic modification) is the human manipulation of an organism's genetic material to create a genetically modified organism that does not exist under natural conditions.

During this process, new genetic material (DNA) is inserted into a the host genome (= the entirety of an organism's hereditary information). First the genetic material of interest is isolated and copied, thereby generating a construct that contains all the necessary genetic elements, which is then inserted into a host organism in a second step.

 Thus, genetic engineering changes the genetic design or genetic blueprint of an organism and forms new combinations of heritable (= erblich) genetic material. Although stem cell research and clon-

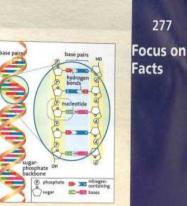
ing are not considered to be genetic engineering by definition, these areas of scientific research are closely connected to genetic engineering because they can be used together.

- In medicine genetic engineering is used e.g. for the mass production of insulin, human growth hormones, follitism (for treating infertility) and vaccines. Researchers are also working to genetically engineer humans and e.g. replace defective humans genes with functional ones and thus cure genetic disorders and diseases like Parkinson's disease, cancer, diabetes, heart diseases and arthritis. Despite all the (possible) benefits of genetic engineering there are also ethical concerns and criticism
- w that this technology is not only used for treatment but for enhancement, modification or alteration of a human being's character, behaviour, appearance, intelligence or adaptability.

Historical development

Year	Major scientific discovery or achievement
1856-63	Austrian monk and scientist Gregor Johann Mendel (1822–84) shows that the inheritance of certain traits follows particular laws (the "Laws of Inheritance"); he is considered to be the "father of modern genetics"
1953	American zoologist James Watson and British physicist Francis Crick discover the double helix the chemical structure of DNA which makes up genes
1972	American biochemist Paul Berg creates the first recombinant (= altered, modified) DNA
1974	German biologist Rudolf Jaenisch creates a transgenic mouse by inserting foreign DNA into its embryo
1976	Genetic Engineering Technology Inc. (Genentech Inc.), the first biotechnology company, is founded in California by US businessman Robert A. Swanson and biochemist Dr. Herbert Boye
1978	Genentech Inc. produces genetically engineered human insulin
1980	the US Supreme Court rules that genetically altered life can be patented
1986	first field trials in the USA and France: genetically engineered tobacco plants are resistant to herbicides (= Unkrautvernichtungsmittel)
1992	China commercializes virus-resistant tobacco plants
1994	the first genetically-modified tomato, designed to have a longer shell life, is released
une 2000	President Clinton announces the completion of the first draft of the human genome
Feb 2001	first analyses of the public and private genome projects are published; the big discovery: Humans have about 30,000 to 40,000 genes, hardly more than a common weed or worm
April 2003	the human genome is declared a finished product; the announcement coincides with the 50 th anniversary of the discovery of the double helix

Focus on Vocab, p. 287



BASIC INFORMATION ON CLASS TOPICS QUALIFYING STAGE 5. VISIONS OF THE FUTURE – SCIENCE, TECHNOLOGY, UTOPIA AND DYSTOPIA

Spot on facts

What can we do with genetics?

Genetics - the essentials

The science of **genetics** aims to identify which features of an organism are inherited and researches how these features pass from generation to generation.

Genes are the basic units of inheritance which influence a person's appearance, abilities, health and behaviour. They are part of a long molecule called DNA, which forms the core of cellular structures called chromosomes. The DNA, whose typical doublehelix structure was discovered in 1953, carries all genetic information for constructing and operating an organism. It contains the 'genetic code' – the

Genetic

modified

engineering is the

of an organism's

genetic make-up.

direct manipulation

The first genetically

rules determining how information in the DNA is translated into protein – which is highly similar among all living beings.

However, this does not mean that all of a person's features are invariably determined by the genetic material inherited at birth. New research shows that the environment plays a significant role too. Nutrition and health during childhood or the mother's lifestyle 20 (smoking, hunger etc.) during pregnancy have a large impact on somebody's appearance and behaviour as well as on their chances of developing certain diseases.



Genetic engineering

organisms (GMOs) were bacteria in 10 1973. GM food, modified to be herbicide resistant or to have better nutritional values, has been sold since 1994 but up to now, critics highlight potential risks to health and the environment.

One key field of genetics is stem cell research. These cells are very interesting for researchers as they have the capability to develop into any kind of cell and to reproduce themselves many times over. Stem cells are found in embryos (where they develop into the various body parts) as well as in adults

20 (where they repair cells damaged e.g. by injury). As adult stem cells are often less versatile, researchers prefer the 'pluripotent' embryonic stem cells. Those are usually taken from fertilised embryos that are 'left over' in fertility clinics – a practice which is ethically controversial and in many countries strictly regulated 25 or even banned.

When it comes to **cloning** - the process of producing genetically identical cells and organisms there are two commonly discussed types: therapeutic and reproductive cloning. **Therapeutic cloning** 30 research aims to manipulate stem cells to develop into tissues or whole organs needed e.g. for transplants. In this process, however, an embryo is destroyed. In **reproductive cloning** a cloned embryo would be transplanted into a uterus for development 35 and natural birth. Most countries have forbidden this type of cloning on humans.

Since 1996, when Dolly the sheep was successfully cloned from an adult stem cell, animal cloning has become reality for more and more species (a dog in 2005, a camel in 2009). While supporters hope for the cloning of extinct or endangered animals, critics express ethical concerns and many consumers oppose products from cloned animals.

1 COMPREHENSION An Note down questions about genetics and genetic engineering which can be answered from the two fact files above. In pairs conduct two 'expert interviews'. → \$25

Os 2 LISTENING

 a) Make sure you know what IVF and mitochondrial diseases such as Parkinson's and diabetes are.
 b) Listen to the programme and take notes to prepare a short report covering the following aspects: name of new technique; why the DNA from three people is needed; whose genes would determine the baby's looks (e.g. hair/eye colour); what is destroyed in the process; arguments against this technique.

6. SHAKESPEARE

334 Focus on

Facts

Shakespeare's Stage

Through the 1580s and 1590s London's Lord Mayors tried to have plays banned because they were thought to be profane and ungodly. Moreover, plays took apprentices and workmen away

from their jobs, since they were performed in daylight each afternoon. As a consequence, the theatre companies began

to move outside the city walls, and in 1594, two new theatres were founded:

to . the Lord Chamberlain's Men played at the

Theatre, the company which Shakespeare joined as an actor and wrote plays for

the Lord Admiral's Company played at the Rose and performed Christopher Marlowe's plays.

In 1599, the Globe was built on the south bank of the Thames, in the suburb of Southwark, which at that time was full of wayfarers' inns for the many travelers who crossed London Bridge to get into or

is out of the city. During Shakespeare's time there were ten open-air amphitheatres in London with thousands of people going to see new plays every day. Until the Globe was destroyed in a fire in 1613, it was the most successful and prosperous theatre of the time.

Shakespeare's Globe, also called the wooden O, could hold around three thousand people. There was no "theatre etiquette" - people didn't have to sit still or stand quietly; often theatres were drunken, 20 rowdy places.

- Some ticket prices of the time (a typical wage in 1594 was eight old pence a day):
- one penny: standing in the yard around the stage (→ for the "groundlings")
- twopence: a wooden seat in a covered gallery
- another penny: a cushion for the seats
- 25 sixpence: a seat in the "Lords' Gallery" - seats placed on either side of the balcony at the back of the stage

On the outside an Elizabethan playhouse had plain, white-plastered walls, but inside it was a blaze of colour. The first Globe was described as "the glory of the Banke". The Globe had a rectangular stage, projecting halfway into the yard. Above the stage was a balcony for musicians and actors. Its decorated

10 ceiling was called the Heavens. Beneath the stage lay Hell out of which ghosts and devils would emerge through a trap door.

The demand for new plays was huge and playwrights likely wrote several new plays every year. Of the thousands of plays which were written during that time, only 230 are still in existence - 39 are Shakespeare's plays that have survived the last four centuries.

- 35 Some topics and leitmotifs of Shakespeare's plays:
- · Sex & crime vs. honour & virtue (e.g. Romeo and Juliet, Much Ado About Nothing, A Midsummer Night's Dream)
- · Distant worlds vs. local colour (e.g. The Tempest, Much Ado About Nothing)
- · Women's rights vs. patriarchal structures (The Taming of the Shrew, Much Ado About Nothing)
- Racism (e.g. The Merchant of Venice, Othello)
- Language and social class (verse vs. prose → e.g. Romeo and Juliet (Nurse), Macbeth (Porter), A Midsummer Night's Dream (Craftsmen))
- · Crime (ocular proof) (e.g. Hamlet, Othello, Macbeth, Julius Cesar, Richard III)
- · Sanity/madness ... order/disorder (e.g. King Lear, Hamlet, Macbeth)
- as Social class -> climbing the social ladder (e.g. Coriolanus, Romeo and Juliet, Much Ado About Nothing)

→ Focus on Vocab, p. 338



Reconstruction of the Globe in London. Southwark

6. SHAKESPEARE

Drama and Theatre

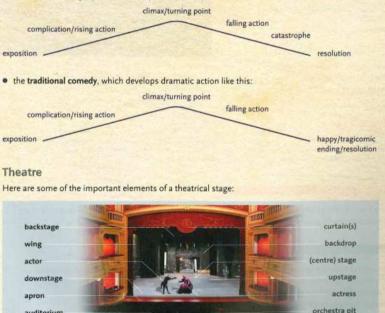


Drama

A drama or play is written to be performed by actors in a theatre, in a film, on television or on the radio. Traditionally, a play is composed of acts (units that reflect main stages in the development of the action), which are further subdivided into scenes (= sequences of continuous, uninterrupted action). Modern plays may just present a sequence of scenes. More reduced forms are one-act plays. One of s the basic elements of drama is conflict between opposing characters (= protagonist/antagonist), or contrasting ideas, attitudes and interests. Conflict creates tension and dramatic action, which is unfolded in dialogues and/or monologues. Good dialogues or monologues must capture the personalities, social positions, attitudes, thoughts and emotions of the characters. Stage directions given by the author/playwright help the director and the actors perform the play on stage. Such directions may be 10 rather short and leave room for individual interpretation, while others are very detailed and indicate the precise design and arrangement of the setting (= time and place), scenery, props (= properties, i.e. furniture, decoration, etc.), the characters' appearances, movements, gestures, ways of speaking, or the sound and lighting to be used.

Drama is the generic term for the genre. The most important subclasses are:

• the traditional tragedy, which develops dramatic action like this:



Note: Explanations of the respective technical terms can be found in the Glossary of Literary Terms, pp: 339 ff.

auditorium

335 Focus o

acts

6. SHAKESPEARE

Spot on facts

Shakespeare's life and times

The Renaissance

The Renaissance was a period of immense cultural change that has its roots in Italy in the late 14th century and extended to the early 17th century in England. It was a time of great learning and great 5 art. Many inventions provided people with new insights and shook the foundations of society. One such invention was the telescope, which dealt a deathblow to geocentric cosmology; another one was the printing press, which made it possible 10 to provide the masses, and not just a select few, with information and literature. Travel reports in particular were eagerly read and inspired British

adventurers like Sir France Drake and Sir Martin

Frobisher to follow the lead of the Spanish, Portuguese and French explorers. At the same time, 15 outbreaks of highly infectious diseases like the plague killed thousands of people and made the lives of the survivors miserable. Shakespeare and other writers of the time met the demands of the people to be distracted and to hear about foreign 20 places by choosing these as the settings for their plays. Although more people than ever before had access to books and learning, many old beliefs and superstitions continued to prevail, as the references to witchcraft and the appearances of ghosts in 25 Shakespeare's plays show.

The Elizabethan Age

Oueen Elizabeth (1533-1603) ruled over England for almost fifty years - most of Shakespeare's life. Her long reign was marked by prosperity and achievements in the arts, but also by various conflicts.

Religion played a dominant role in most people's lives. 10 thus a lot of conflicts were caused by religious passions. Elizabeth's father, Henry VIII, a very headstrong and despotic

monarch, broke with Rome and established himself 15 as the head of the Protestant Church of England

(also known as the 'Anglican Church'). His successors either tried to return England to Catholicism (like Mary), or to complete the Protestant Reformation (like Elizabeth). Either way, adherents of the 'wrong' 20 religion were relentlessly persecuted.

- Conspiracies and conflicts with other nations. especially with their Catholic rivals Spain and France, were another threat to stability. A tight network of spies and informants helped to find Catholics
- 25 suspected of plotting against the Queen. They died either in the torture chambers or on the scaffold. Executions were public and frequent: Between 1,500 and 2,000 took place every year, several hundreds of them in London, and together with bear baiting 30 they constituted the most gruesome form of public

View of London in Shakespeare's day

entertainment. It is small wonder then that shows of violence are frequent in Shakespeare's plays.

Nevertheless, the Elizabethan Age is considered a "golden age" due to its relative stability, economic growth and the flowering of theatre, literature and music. Elizabeth succeeded in securing her position in England and abroad. She strengthened the English navy, sent adventurers to faraway countries, welcomed the idea of planting colonies there and encouraged privateers to attack Spanish merchant ships that were bringing gold from South America. The successful defeat of the Spanish Armada in 1588 was one of the most glorious moments of her reign and helped secure England's position as a leading sea power. When Elizabeth died heirless in 45 1603, everything had been arranged for a smooth transition of power to James of Scotland.

BASIC INFORMATION ON CLASS TOPICS QUALIFYING STAGE

6. SHAKESPEARE

Spot on language

Understanding Shakespeare's English

Characteristics of Elizabethan English

There is no reason to be afraid of Shakespeare's English. Of course some of the words he used have changed their meaning or are no longer in use, and some seem strange, but on the whole his language is not so far removed from the English we speak today. English was in flux then. Old 5 forms like thee [di:]/thou [dau], thy/thine co-existed with the newer you and your, and we find all these forms in Shakespeare's plays. Some verb endings still existed which we do not use anymore, like -st (2nd person singular) or -th (3rd person singular). Another obvious difference is the rare use of the auxiliary "do" and its derivatives: they simply were not yet very 10 common in Elizabethan days. Hence the sometimes strange word order in Shakespeare's sentences.



Queen Elizabeth

1 Change these sentences from Shakespearean English into modern English.

- 1. Hath your grace not a brother like you?
- 2. Where grows this flower?
- 3. Thou hast it now.
- 4. Be not afeared!
- 5. Seest thou this letter?
- 9. Wherefore didst thou this? 10. Thou likedst not that

8. Thou canst see with thine own eyes.

6. She staved not long.

7. What looked he like?

three-and-twenty!

- 2 In Shakespeare's day, the subjunctive (e.g., "the Lord be praised") was used more often than it is today. It was used to express a wish or an intention and also in conditional clauses. Turn the following lines from Shakespeare plays into modern English by using forms of "want to" or "wish" or an if-clause + present tense. Modernise other words, too, if necessary (e.g. in sentence 1, "method" means "system").
- 1. Though this be madness, yet there is method 4. Where will you that I go to answer this charge? in't. 5. Wake Duncan with thy knocking! I would thou 2. Wilt thou be gone? It is not yet near day. couldst!
- 3. If this be known to you, then we have done you 6. I would there were no age between sixteen and wrong.
- 3 Shakespeare invented or at least popularised a great number of phrases that have found a permanent place in the English language. Here are some - explain them and find other ways
- 1. The team has lost three times in a row I'd say the coach is in a pickle.
- 2. I love babies, but triplets are too much of a good thing.
- 3. Mandy should be more careful what she says. She wears her heart on her sleeve.
- 4. After the second own goal he was the laughing stock of the team.
- 5. He broke the ice by complimenting her on her dress.
- 6. My children came home for the weekend they have eaten me out of house and home.
- 7. We found out the truth. The game is up!
- 8. After the bank's bankruptcy the manager melted into thin air.
- 9. He was snatched out of the jaws of death by the surgeon who operated on him.
- 10. Like many other investors, he played fast and loose.

248

of saving the same thing.

7. THE MEDIA

The Media

In the domain of communication, media are tools used to store or transmit information and/or data. The term mass media or public media is used to describe the sum of mass distributors of news. and entertainment. These media include print media, such as books, electronic media, such as TV and radio and the digital media, like the Internet, mobile phones, and so on. Johannes Gutenberg, who perfected the printing press with movable types in 1454. is considered the inventor of "print media". Today, modern com-



munication media facilitate so-called "many-to-many communication" (e.g. via e-mail or Internet fo-¹⁰ rums), whereas more traditional media typically represent "one-to-many communication" (e.g. TV, radio, cinema). Generally, the purpose of the mass media is to promote businesses and their products. and provide entertainment, information and socially-relevant services.

Print media

Print media	
books)	
 newspapers, magazines 	 require literacy; used to inform or entertain people; more word-based; reading usually is a quiet, solitary occupation; easily accessible and affordable for most people
 catalogues 	
 publishing 	- the distribution of books, magazines, etc.
Electronic media	
broadcasting	 information, entertainment, infotainment, advertising
 discs, tapes 	- storage and reproduction of data, music, etc.
 film (cinema) 	 focus on moving images and sound; for entertainment, education, to inspire audi- ences; movies can be works of art; can also be highly manipulative
E-books (elec-	 texts can be cross-referenced or annotated more easily; multiple books can be stored;
tronic books)	texts can be animated; requires access to an electronic device and software
• Internet	 a more interactive form of mass media; almost everything has become accessible via the Internet; global connection of people; forum for business, entertainment, infor- mation, education; privacy and security issues; reliability and authenticity of data is difficult to verify
 blogs (web logs) 	 an interactive format; involves the creation of an individual website to share one's own ideas, interests, photos, etc. and receive comments and feedback from readers
• podcasts	 digital audio files; can be used for playback on portable media players; used for enter- tainment or information
 World Wide Web 	 accessible through the Internet; hypertext documents offer a huge variety of texts, images, information, videos, etc.; anyone with a website is able to reach and address a global audience
 social networking (e.g. Facebook, MySpace, etc.) 	 virtual platforms to build online communities for social interaction; means to connect friends and share information; danger of giving out too much private information and possible misuse of these data
 mobile phones 	 used for verbal one-to-one communication and the exchange of information; trend
- moone priories	towards entertainment → mobile music, diverse ringtones, MP3 files, music videos, etc. are available: SMS text messaging is highly popular; TV access; games
 publishing, e-publishing 	 the activity of making information available to the public; e.g. website content, digital music, software, the distribution of books, magazines, musical works, software, etc.
 video games 	 mostly used for entertainment; can be played alone or networked with others; often controversial due to claims that they are too violent, sexually offensive, etc.
Personal media	-> non-mass media: person-to-person communication
telephony	- voice communication over distances; Internet protocol (IP) telephony
• mail (post)	 written correspondence that is physically sent and delivered through the postal system globally; in many countries, private companies now compete with the government's

postal service; federal laws guarantee the privacy of the letters/documents sent → Focus on Vocab, p. 323

7. THE MEDIA

322 Focus on

Facts

The Press

"supermarket tab-

Weekly; Examiner;

New Yorker, etc.

loids"*

An overview of different newspaper and magazine formats

Characteristics usually in larger formats and typically with more Quality newspapers/

- broadsheets* edition/copy a accuracy pages headlines on the front page are smaller in size and informative (-ness) . vis-The Times: The more informative and factual ual material is thought-Guardian: The New York · proportionally more text than photos and in smaller provoking ironical/satiri-Times: The Independent; cal a column a to cover print The Financial Times: more informative/credible coverage a subject/topic editorial Daily Telegraph; articles are in-depth, present facts, dates/numbers/ to generate sth. International Herald statistics; are more balanced source of information Tribune: The Scotsman: use of quotations from credible people to be in/to hit the head-The Wall Street Journal: Ianguage is more objective/precise/ elaborate/ lines a headline-grabbing The Observer: USA formal sophisticated special Today: The Chicago information is based on serious research; analysis; feature a current affairs Tribune; The Washington hard news to focus on sth. Post; The Los Angeles · objectivity through a variety of perspectives and Times, etc. credible sources offer critical comments on issues Tabloids/"popular smaller formats and fewer pages to skim a newspaper newspapers"/ entertaining biased
 - use of banner headlines in bold type
 - more sensationalist and play on people's emotions
 - often one-sided and exaggerated reporting
- no sharp line between fact and fiction, fact and The Sun: Daily Star, The oninion
- Daily Express; Daily use of subjective, often informal language Mirror; The Daily Mail; to appeal to the readership's emotions Chicago Sun-Times;
- · often lack of reliable sources of information New York Post, World
- doubtful/dubious/debatable sources of information · focus on 'less serious' content, e.g. crime stories, Newsday; Globe, etc.
- celebrities, etc. Magazines/periodicals* periodical publications
- published (bi-)weekly, monthly, etc. TIME: Esquire:
- · printed in colour on glossy paper Cosmopolitan: Reader's
 - · financed by advertising
- Digest; Newsweek; · two broad categories: consumer magazines and Forbes; O - The Oprah business magazines Magazine; People;
 - often contain cartoons/reviews
- Harper's Magazine; The sometimes essays or preprints of books by famous
 - journalists/authors

Further important components of newspapers and magazines

- · advice column/agony aunt*: a part of a newspaper or magazine in which a person (not necessarily an expert) gives advice to readers about their personal problems
- human interest story*: a feature story that presents people and their problems in an emotional way that attracts interest and evokes sympathy in the reader, often criticized as "soft", sensationalistic news or manipulative news
- Ietter to the editor*: a letter sent to a publication about issues of concern to its readers; usually appears in the same specific place (e.g. at the beginning of a newspaper or magazine); comments on or is related to a current or previous edition; can be critical or praising

→ Focus on Vocab, p. 323

to publish a newspaper

preiudiced gossip

hound sb. . to invade

tion/to exaggerate

leanings

page

sb.'s privacy a exaggera-

superficial/superficiality

inaccuracy (political)

to incorporate supple-

ments subscription/to

subscribe circulation

compilation of a front

editor publisher

attention-grabbing to

Focus on Facts

313

Usage/purposes/social impacts

7. THE MEDIA

Spot on facts

Developments in the media

Media in the twentieth century

In the twentieth century people kept up with the news by reading print media such as newspapers and periodicals, listening to the radio or watching the news on television. Newspapers came in two main 5 formats: 'broadsheets', generally quality newspapers.

- and 'tabloids', mainly popular newspapers. Quality newspapers tended to have longer, more in-depth articles and presented information in a factual, less sensational manner.
- The tabloids were known for their scandalmongering, celebrity gossip and subjective style. They used attention-grabbing headlines, often using puns, and had more visual content. However, most of the quality newspapers in the UK are now published in a
- ¹⁵ tabloid format, and the differences in the journalistic style are not as pronounced as they used to be.

The changing face of the media

The beginning of the twenty-first century saw great changes in the media landscape, as the rise of digital technologies has fundamentally changed how we communicate with each other. Online and perhaps 5 more importantly mobile media have created new opportunities for us to become actively involved in sharing, remixing, and creating new content, socalled user-generated content. We are now able to participate in the news gathering process and can 10 help to spread stories around the world. Stories are now often broken on social media websites and people give evewitness reports from hotspots around

Where people got news yesterday (in millions)

Watched news on TV

Got online/mobile news

98 00 02

the world. Directly after the Boston marathon bombings in 2013, ordinary people continually updated the world on what was going on, using their smartphones to take and post photos on socialnetworking sites. Journalists and news agencies can also now use crowdsourcing to ensure that they have access to all kinds of personalised content. One of the dangers with this approach is the lack of control regarding copyright, especially as some people seem unaware that infringing copyright or even committing piracy is a crime.



1 ANALYSIS Where did you get your news yesterday? Do a quick survey of the people in your class and compare your findings to those presented in the graph above. → 527 Social media and politics

Social media has gained importance as a forum for politics and political activism. Platforms such as Twitter, YouTube and Facebook have dramatically changed the way elections are run in many countries.

- They provide new ways for politicians to reach out to the electorate, especially to younger voters. By analysing the information collected on such platforms, a campaign can be customised to address the needs of a particular target group. In addition
- these platforms also offer politicians immediacy, so they can instantaneously find out how people respond to certain ideas or even controversies. One of the main advantages is that politicians no longer have to solely rely on the mass media to get
- be their message to the people as they can connect with them directly in a more personal and faster way. An advantage for the public is that like-minded voters and activists can now easily share news and

"Whatever technology comes and goes, the ability of a candidate or, for that matter, a brand to connect with people and show the people that they respect them and are about them and want to empower them is going to be increasingly important to the outcome because people aren't going to tolerate anything less. There's going to be a competitor who does respect that stuff and who does get that stuff," Teddy Goff, Digital Director for President Obama's 2012 dection campaign

Social media and voting Have been encouraged to vote by family, friends Have announced your vote via social media Have encouraged others to vote for a particular candidate ages 18-29 30-49 50-64 65+

information with each other on Facebook or on Twitter.

Social media platforms have also enabled people to draw attention to politically charged situations. In some cases when governments have tried to block democratic processes and banned journalists from entering their country during times of unrest, local citizens have continued to share their stories in realtime via social networking sites.



Advertising

Advertising has been around for centuries. People are used to seeing adverts on billboards, on television or in newspapers. Increasingly, however, consumers are being bombarded with emails and online adverts

5 that have been specially customised according to the user's search history and digital footprint. Viral marketing and crowdsourcing are now popular with advertisers as they can get consumers to spread the message and share their experiences. They also often recruit celebrities to endorse products or to mention

them on their social media sites. Advertisers are always looking to find interesting and innovative ways to advertise their products without doing so overtly, so-called covert advertising. One way is through infotisement: articles that seem 15 to provide readers with news or information but that are really trying to sell a product or brand related to the story. Crucially these articles are written by advertisers and not by journalists. Advertainment combines advertising with entertainment and 20 includes product placement in films or TV shows, but also specially developed short films by film directors around a product. In some cases they are also using transmedia storytelling (across different media) to connect with consumers in a more engaging and 25 immersive way.

2 visuals Describe and analyse the cartoons. Explain their relevance to the topic. → \$28.2 → △1

111

110

Read a

50

25

BASIC INFORMATION ON CLASS TOPICS QUALIFYING STAGE

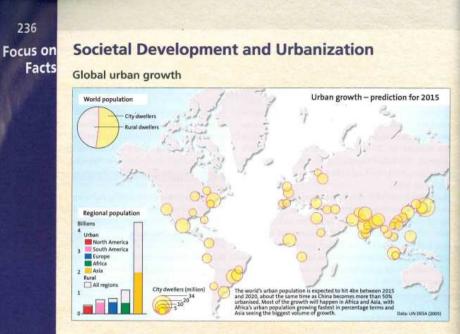
7. THE MEDIA

Television was one of the most important inventions of the twentieth century, as it was not only an important source of news and information but also entertainment. In the beginning there were only a few channels, but cable TV, then satellite TV greatly increased their number, giving people more freedom of choice, such as live coverage of sporting events, current affairs programmes, documentaries,

popular science programmes, dramas, soaps and 25 sitcoms, panel games, quiz shows and reality TV shows.

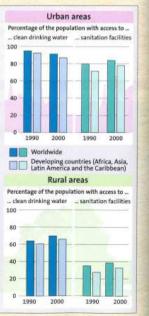
Traditional news sources, such as TV, radio and print newspapers, are increasingly being replaced by digital and online news sources. In fact, more Americans now access the news via the latter and often no longer turn to traditional sources.

8. SOCIETY AND DEMOCRACY



Megacity dynamics and basic problems

- explosive population growth
- alarming increases in poverty caused by unemployment
- massive infrastructure deficits in telecommunication, public transportation and commuting services
- land and housing shortages
- environmental issues (contaminated water, air pollution, waste disposal, weed growth, overdrawn and sinking aquifers (= Grundwasserspiegel))
- health problems: incubation of diseases, high mortality rates, toxic environmental conditions (e.g. air and water pollution)
- spread of diseases such as cholera, tuberculosis and sexually transmitted diseases (AIDS/HIV)
- · capital scarcity (- Mangel)
- lack of educational systems
- lack of medical facilities
- social and political instability
- vulnerability to terrorism (e.g. attacks against embassies, travelers)



BASIC INFORMATION ON CLASS TOPICS QUALIFYING STAGE

8. SOCIETY AND DEMOCRACY

(Global) Economy

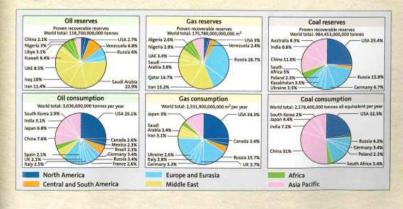
Historical roots

- early "world economies" like Phoenicia (1200-800 B.C.), the Roman Empire (510 B.C.-500 A.D.), the Silk Road (1" century) and the British East India Company (founded in 1608) establish an international network of trading routes and found commercial outposts
- inventions and discoveries of the late Middle Ages and Renaissance enable people in Europe to sail and travel longer distances and become less dependable on weather conditions (e.g. 13th cent.: magnetic compass, mechanical clock, spectacles/lenses, scales for weighing; 16th/17th cent.: pocket watch, thermometer, telescope) → international trading and exchange of goods is fostered
- the discovery of new continents and their subsequent conquest in the 16th and 17th centuries gives. European countries access to natural resources and labour
- the Industrial Revolution, starting with the invention of James Watt's steam engine, enables the industrialized mass production of goods which is based on the constant input of resources, e.g. from overseas colonies
- in the 19th century colonialism and imperialism is at its peak, leading to the growth of Western economic power and dominance, but also dramatic and long-lasting social and economic problems in the colonised countries which linger to this day

Global players - and the consequences

- multinational companies (or mega corporations) play an important role in the international economy: they often have powerful influence on local economies, international relations and even politics (→ lobbying)
- many multinational companies are criticized due to lax environmental standards, bad labour standards (e.g. sweatshops in developing countries, control of tariffs → unfair wages), marginalization of local businesses/markets
- many multinationals hold patents (e.g. Siemens, Adidas) in order to prevent the rise of competitors
- examples of influential multinational corporations are: ExxonMobil, Wal-Mart, McDonald's, General Electric, Boeing, Microsoft and British Petrol
- the United Nations declare 2005 the International Year of Microcredit; microloans are designed to spur entrepreneurship in developing countries and gain acceptance in the mainstream finance industry as a source of future growth

Energy – reserves and consumption



BASIC INFORMATION ON CLASS TOPICS QUALIFYING STAGE 8. SOCIETY AND DEMOCRACY

180 Focus on

Facts

Democracy

Historical orgins

The word **"democracy" first emerged around 500 B.C.** in Athens, Greece. Following revolts and the removal of tyrannical leaders, the old form of government was replaced by the rule (= kratos) of the people (= demos). The inhabitants of a city state (= polis) considered themselves to be citizens (= polites) with the legal right to speak out and be heard and consulted in matters of common interest s (= politiea), i.e. politics. The **fundamental democratic ideal was freedom**, which meant **political liberty**

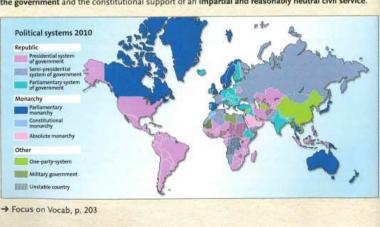
and participation in decision-making, but also **private liberty** to live more or less as one pleased. In Greek society the freedom to speak freely and to participate in political affairs was restricted to men who belonged to a particular social class; women, so-called "barbarians" and slaves did not enjoy free politics. For those people, it took at least another two thousand years before they were given equal

 rights. Aristotle (384-322 B.C.), a Greek philosopher, thought that the blending of knowledge and democratic power and opinion created the best possible state, which was sound, just and good. The Greeks believed that citizenship was the highest end of man, and that immortality meant being remembered for service to the state.

Democratic principles today

Yale Professor Robert Dahl has defined the general characteristics of modern democracies as follows:

- elected representatives (control of the government by members of a parliament, assembly, etc. who are elected by the citizens)
- free, fair, and frequent elections (in which coercion [kao'3: [n] (Zwang, Nötigung) is not practiced or relatively rare)
- freedom of expression (citizens have the right to express themselves without danger of severe punishment on political matters)
- access to alternative, independent sources of information (e.g. press, broadcasting media, Internet)
- autonomous [p:tonamas] associations (the right to form independent associations or organizations, including independent political parties or interest groups)
- inclusive citizenship (no adult permanently residing in the country and subject to its laws can be denied the rights that are available to citizens, including the five principles above)



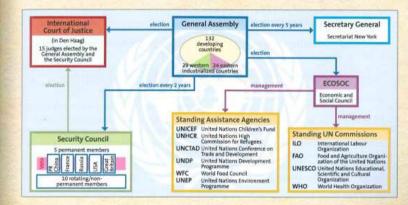
Additional aspects that are not included in this list are the independence of the judiciary system from the government and the constitutional support of an impartial and reasonably neutral civil service.

The United Nations

The United Nations Organization (UNO, UN) was founded in 1945 to replace the League of Nations in order to stop wars between countries and as a platform for international dialogue. It contains multiple subsidiary organizations with diverse functions to carry out the UN's missions. Today, about 192 nations belong to the UN. When nations become a member of the UN, they agree to accept the obligas tions of the UN Charter, which states the four basic purposes of the UN:

- to maintain international peace and security
- to develop friendly relations among nations
- · to be a centre for harmonizing the actions of nations
- to cooperate in solving international problems and promoting respect for human rights

The organization of the United Nations



· Family

· Health

Governance

Human Rights

Human Settlements

Relief Assistance

Indigenous People

Intellectual Property

International Law

International Finance

Technology

· Iraq

Labour

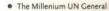
Humanitarian and Disaster

Information Communications

· Food

Global issues on the UN Agenda

- Africa
- Ageing
- Agriculture
- · AIDS
- Atomic Energy
 Children
- Children
 Climate Change
- Culture
- Decolonization
- Demining
- Development Corporation
- · Persons with Disabilities
- Disarmament
- Drugs and Crime
- Education
- Elections
- Energy
- Environment
- www.un.org/issues
- → Focus on Vocab, p. 203



- Assembly The Goals
- Questions of Palestine
- · Peace and Security
- Population
- Refugees
- Science and Technology
- Social Development
- Outer Space
- Statistics
- Sustainable Development
 Terrorism
- Trade and Development
- Volunteerism
- · Water
- Women
- Oceans and the Law of the Sea
 Oceans and the Law of the Sea
- Least Developed Countries

197 Focus on Facts

BASIC INFORMATION ON CLASS TOPICS QUALIFYING STAGE 8. SOCIETY AND DEMOCRACY

8. SOCIETY AND DEMOCRACY

198 Focus on Documents

The Universal Declaration of Human Rights

On 10 December 1948 the General Assembly of the United Nations adopted and proclaimed the Universal Declaration of Human Rights. Although it is not a legally binding document it outlines a distinct understanding and view of human rights.

Article 1

All human beings are born free and equal in dignity and rights. They are endowed with reason and conscience and should act towards one another in a spirit of brotherhood.

Article 2

Everyone is entitled to all the rights and freedoms set forth in this Declaration, without distinction of any kind, such as race, colour, sex, language, religion, political or other opinion, national or social origin, property, birth or other status. [...]

Article 3

Everyone has the right to life, liberty and security of person. Article 4

Article 4

No one shall be held in slavery or servitude; slavery and the slave trade shall be prohibited in all their forms.

Article 5

No one shall be subjected to torture or to cruel, inhuman or degrading treatment or punishment.

Article 6

Everyone has the right to recognition everywhere as a person before the law.

Article 7

All are equal before the law and are entitled without any discrimination to equal protection of the law. All are entitled to equal protection against any discrimination in violation of this Declaration and against any incitement to such discrimination.

Article 8

Everyone has the right to an effective remedy by the competent national tribunals for acts violating the fundamental rights granted him by the constitution or by law.

Article 9

No one shall be subjected to arbitrary arrest, detention or exile. [...]

Article 16

(1) Men and women of full age, without any limitation due to race, nationality or religion, have the right to marry and to found a family. They are entitled to equal rights as to marriage, during marriage and at its dissolution.

(2) Marriage shall be entered into only with the free and full consent of the intending spouses. [...] Article 17

Artici

Everyone has the right to own property alone as well as in association with others.
 No one shall be arbitrarily deprived of his property. [...]

Article 19

Everyone has the right to freedom of opinion and expression; this right includes freedom to hold opinions without interference and to seek, receive and impart information and ideas through any media and regardless of frontiers. [...]

Article 26

(1) Everyone has the right to education. Education shall be free, at least in the elementary and fundamental stages. Elementary education shall be compulsory. Technical and professional education shall be made generally available and higher education shall be equally accessible to all on the basis of merit. [...]

Article 28

Everyone is entitled to a social and international order in which the rights and freedoms set forth in this Declaration can be fully realized.

→ Focus on Vocab, p. 203

LANGUAGE KIT – AVOIDING GERMAN-ENGLISH INTERFERENCE

Common mistakes derive from what it is called German-English Interference, i.e. that linguistic structures of German are transferred into English. However, both languages have different patterns and rules. Here are some of them that often lead to mistakes.

Grammar

Verb/Tense: There is a significant lack of correspondence between the tenses used in English to convey a particular meaning and those used in German. For example, German does not have a continuous (also called progressive) tense form, so it is common to hear wrong sentences such as *I can't come now; I eat my dinner; (correct: I can't come now, I am eating dinner)* or conversely *He is riding his bike to school every day.*

The present progressive is either used for actions that are happening right now or with a future meaning for something that is certain to happen, the simple present is used to describe regular or general actions.

Another example of the lack of correspondence is the use of the present simple in German where English uses the future with *will*. This leads to mistakes such as: *I tell him when I see him.* (correct: *I will tell him when I see him.*)

A further common problem for Germans is choosing the correct tense to talk about the past. Typically spoken German uses the present perfect to talk about past events: *Dann habe ich ein Bier getrunken*. The same tense is used in English produces the incorrect: *Then I have drunk a beer*. (correct: Then I had/drank a beer.)

The present perfect is used on several occasions:

- We use the Present Perfect to say that an action happened at an unspecified time before now. The exact time is not important. (I **have seen** that movie twenty times.)
- You can use the Present Perfect to describe your experience. (I have been to France twice. / I have never been to France. / I have been to France before.)
- We often use the Present Perfect to talk about change that has happened over a period of time. (You have grown since the last time I saw you.)
- We often use the Present Perfect to list the accomplishments of individuals and humanity. You cannot mention a specific time. (Doctors **have cured** many deadly diseases)
- We often use the Present Perfect to say that an action which we expected has not happened. Using the Present Perfect suggests that we are still waiting for the action to happen. (Bill **has** still **not arrived**.)
- We also use the Present Perfect to talk about several different actions which have occurred in the past at different times. Present Perfect suggests the process is not complete and more actions are possible. (We **have had** many major problems while working on this project.)
- We use the Present Perfect to show that something started in the past and has continued up until now. (I **have had** a cold for two weeks.)

The simple past, on the other hand, is used to express the idea that an action started and finished at a specific time in the past, it can be used with a duration which starts and stops in the past, and list a series of completed actions in the past. These actions happen 1st, 2nd, 3rd, 4th, and so on.

LANGUAGE KIT – AVOIDING GERMAN-ENGLISH INTERFERENCE

NEGATIVE SENTENCES

subject	verb	indirect object	direct object	place	time
Ι	will not tell	you	the story	at school	tomorrow.
Не	did not give	me	the money	at school	today.

SUBORDINATE CLAUSES

conjunction	subject	verb	indirect object	direct object	place	time
	Ι	will tell	you	the story	at school	tomorrow
because	Ι	don't have		time		now.

VERY COMPLEX SENTENCES

In very complex sentences, we apply the following word order:

Subject – verb – objects (indirect before direct) – manner (how) – place – time.

If we have more than one part of the sentence for one category, we start with detailed information before general information. Adverbs of time are always followed by the full verb.

subject	verb	objects	manner	place 1	place 2	time
Не	played		beautifully	in the concert	at the concert hall	last night.

subject verb objects manner place 1 place 2 time

He played beautifully in the concert at the concert hall last night.

Here you see an example for more detailed information (in the concert) before more general information (at the concert hall). There is no object in this sentence. You could, however, easily add one (the piano, the guitar) in the object position.

Common errors	Rule	Correction
In 1979 was a serious accident in a nuclear power plant near Harrisburg, Pennsylvania.	A form of <i>be</i> cannot stand alone after an adverbial at the begin- ning of a sentence. It must be used with <i>there</i> (<i>there</i> is / <i>there</i> <i>was</i> , etc.).	In 1979 there was a serious ac- cident in a nuclear power plant near Harrisburg, Pennsylvania.
This explains the author with an example.	The subject almost always comes before the verb, followed by the object (S-V-O). Inversion as in German ('Dich kenne ich!') is not possible.	The author explains this with an example.
She ran past the barrier and em- braced happily her parents.	Verb and object are (almost) never separated in English.	She ran past the barrier and embraced her parents happily .
The Puritans came to the New World looking for not riches, but religious freedom.	The construction <i>not A, but B</i> sounds a bit 'German'. The usual pattern is <i>B, not A</i> .	The Puritans came to the New World looking for religious freedom, not riches .
There happen many accidents on this part of the motorway.	In modern English, <i>there</i> is not used in front of verbs other than <i>be.</i>	Many accidents happen on this part of the motorway.
Britain and Germany belong both to the NATO.	When <i>both</i> is used to modify a pair of nouns (<i>A</i> and <i>B</i>), it is usually placed in front position (<i>both A</i> and <i>B</i> = ' sowohl A als auch B'). If the noun pair is the subject of the sentence, <i>both</i> can follow it (<i>A</i> and <i>B</i> both).	Both Britain and Germany /Britain and Germany both be- long to the NATO.
The park opens at 8 o'clock, so we can drive after breakfast there.	Adverbials of place usually come before adverbials of time (at the end of a clause).	The park opens at 8 o'clock, so we can drive there after break-fast .
Especially girls are interested in games that require social skills.	The adverb <i>especially is</i> not used at the beginning of a sentence.	Girls, especially , are interested in games that require social skills.

WORD ORDER

BASIC SENTENCES					
Basically, the word order in English is almost always subject-verb-object (S-V-O)					
subject	verb	object			
Ι	speak	English			
Ι	can speak	English			

COMPLEX SENTENCES

In more complex sentences, word order follows this pattern:

subject	verb	indirect object	direct object	place	time
Ι	will tell	you	the story	at school	tomorrow.
Ich	werde erzählen	dir	die Geschichte	in der Schule	morgen.

In positive sentences with more than one verb, the two verbs are never separated!

ADVERBS Types of adverbs and their positions

Different types of adverbs go in different places.

1.1

Different types of adverbs	-	1
type	position	example
manner	They usually go in end posi- tion. They sometimes go in mid position if the adverb is not the most important part of the clause or if the object is	She ate quickly . She quickly ate her dinner and ran out.
place	very long. They usually go in end posi- tion. They sometimes go in front position, especially in writing.	Can you come over here ? We'll be at that table there . Here she sat. Outside , there was a small pond.
time	They usually go in end posi- tion. They sometimes go in front position especially if we want to emphasise the adverb.	I'm flying to Edinburgh tomorrow . Today , I'm going to clean the house.
duration	They usually go in end posi- tion.	I'm not staying long .
frequency	They usually go in mid posi- tion. They sometimes go in front position. They can also go in end posi- tion. <i>Always, ever and never</i> do not usually go in front position.	We often have friends to stay. I usually get up late on weekends. I could never swim fast. Sometimes she wore a woollen hat. We don't see them very often . Not: Never I could swim fast .
degree	<i>Really, very, quite</i> usually go in mid position. <i>A lot</i> and <i>a bit</i> usually go in end position.	I really like those pink flowers. We go to Ireland a lot . I'd just like to change things a bit.
focusing	They usually go in mid posi- tion.	He simply walked out without saying a word.
certainty or obligation	Some go in mid position: probably, possibly, certainly. Others go in front position: maybe, perhaps or in end po- sitions after a comma.	It'll probably rain. Maybe Nick will know the answer. Can I get you a drink, or something to eat, perhaps ?
viewpoint	They usually go outside the clause, often at the beginning. They can sometimes go in mid position, especially in formal writing.	Personally , I'd rather not go out. This must, frankly , be the craziest idea anyone has ever had.
evaluative	They usually go outside the clause, often at the beginning. They can sometimes go in mid position. In informal speaking they can go in end position.	Unfortunately , I forgot my swimming costume so I had to sit on the side and watch. We have stupidly forgotten the tickets. They missed the bus, apparently .

Adverbs of manner, place	e and time usually come in end position:
He played brilliantly .	
If the verb has an object,	the adverb comes after the object:
We [verb]made [object]a	decision [adverb] quickly then left.
When there is more than place, time:	one of the three types of adverb together, they usually go in the order: manner
You start off [manner]slo	wy [time] in the beginning.
Not: You start off in the b	eginning slowly.
James played [manner] []	place] <i>brilliantly in the match on</i> [time] <i>Saturday.</i> (preferred to James played
brilliantly on Saturday in	the match.)
Warning:	
We don't put adverbs be	tween the verb and the object:
She [verb]plays [object]t	he piano [adverb] really well . I've heard her.
Not: She plays really well	the piano.
I don't watch TV very oft	en.

1.3 Evaluative and viewpoint

Manner, place and time

Adverbs indicating the attitude and point of view of the speaker or writer usually go at the beginning. These adverbs are called sentence adverbs because they refer to the whole sentence or utterance: *Actually*, *I think the meeting is on Wednesday, not Thursday.*

Obviously, we can't tell you the result but we can give you an indication.

1.4 Position with *here* and *there*

Warning:

1.2

If the subject is a pronoun (*it/he/she/you* etc.), it comes directly after the adverbs *here* and *there*. If the subject is a noun, it comes directly after the verb:

Here she is. Not: Here is she. There it goes. Not: There goes it. Here comes the bus. Not: Here the bus comes.

RESOURCE AND LINK SECTION

Online dictionaries

http://www.oxforddictionaries.com/ http://www.oxfordlearnersdictionaries.com/ http://de.pons.com/ http://www.dict.cc/ http://www.freecollocation.com (Collocation dictionary, very useful to see which words usually go together)

Language help

https://www.ego4u.de/ http://learnenglish.britishcouncil.org/en/english-grammar http://www.bbc.co.uk/learningenglish http://www.dailywritingtips.com/

Free literature guides http://www.sparknotes.com/sparknotes/

News and information (a very brief selection)

http://www.bbc.co.uk (BBC website) http://www.theguardian.com/international (The Guardian, English left-wing/liberal quality paper) http://www.huffingtonpost.com (Huffington Post, online newspaper) http://www.time.com (TIME magazine, US) http://www.independent.co.uk (English quality newspaper) http://www.telegraph.co.uk (English quality newspaper) http://www.newyorker.com (American magazine)

Books

<u>Grammar</u>

Henrichs, Ellen: Englische Grammatik. München: Bassermann, 2008.
Murphy, Raymond: English Grammar in Use. A self-study reference and practice book for intermediate learners of English. Cambridge: CUP, 2012.
Hewings, Martin: Advanced Grammar in Use. A self-study reference and practice book for advanced learners of English. Cambridge: CUP, 2013.
PONS Schülergrammatik Englisch. Stuttgart: Pons 2013.

Dictionaries

Oxford Phrasal Verbs Dictionary. Oxford: OUP, 2006. Francis, Ben and McIntosh, Colin (ed.): Oxford Collocations Dictionary. Oxford: OUP, 2009. Oxford Advanced Learners Dictionary. 9th ed. Oxford: OUP, 2015.

A-Level Preparation

Lehnen, Thomas et. al.: Finale Prüfungstraining. Englisch. Braunschweig: Westermann 2015.